

**FORD TOURNEO CUSTOM /
TRANSIT CUSTOM Owner's manual**



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3964en-202304-20230413135509

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	17
Using This Publication	17
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	17

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	18
Service Data	19
Event Data	19
Settings Data	20
Connected Vehicle Data	20
Mobile Device Data	20
Emergency Call System Data	21

Environment

Protecting the Environment	22
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Steering Wheel	23
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, LHD	24
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, RHD	25
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, LHD	26
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, RHD	27

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	28
Child Restraint Anchor Points	29
Child Restraints	33
Booster Seats	38
Child Safety Locks	39

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	40
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	40

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	40
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	41
Seatbelt Reminder	41
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	42

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	43
How Do the Side Airbags Work	43
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	44
Airbag Precautions	44
Passenger Airbag Indicators	45
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	45
Airbags – Troubleshooting	46

eCall

What Is eCall	47
How Does eCall Work	47
Emergency Call Requirements	47
Emergency Call Limitations	47
Manually Making an Emergency Call	47
Emergency Call Indicators	48
Changing the Backup Battery	49
eCall – Troubleshooting	49

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	50
Removing the Key Blade	50
Locating Your Vehicle	50
Changing the Remote Control Battery	50
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	52
Programming the Remote Control	52
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	52

Table of Contents

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	54
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	56
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	56
Autounlock	57
Autolock	57
Mislock	58
Autorelock	58
Door Lock Indicators	58
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	58
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	58

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	60
Opening the Sliding Door	60
Closing the Sliding Door	61
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement	62
Resetting the Power Sliding Door	62
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting	63

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	65
Opening the Sliding Door	65
Closing the Sliding Door	66

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	67
Keyless Entry Limitations	67
Keyless Entry Settings	67
Using Keyless Entry	67
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	68

Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	69
Opening the Liftgate	69
Closing the Liftgate	70
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	70

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	71
Anti-Theft Alarm System	71
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	72
Security – Troubleshooting	73

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	75
Locking the Steering Wheel	75
Heated Steering Wheel	75

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	77
Autowipers	77
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	78
Reverse Wipe	78
Checking the Wiper Blades	78
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	78
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	79
Washers	79
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	80

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	81
Headlamps	81
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	82
Autolamps	83
Exterior Lamps	83
Automatic High Beam Control	85
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	87
Glare Free High Beam Control	87

Table of Contents

Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	90
Adaptive Front Lighting	90
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting	92
Interior Lighting	
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	93
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	93
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus	93
Interior Lamp Function	94
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	94
Ambient Lighting	94
Cargo Lamps	94
Windows	
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Driver Window	96
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows	96
Global Opening and Closing	97
Window Bounce-Back	98
Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows	99
Interior Mirror	
Interior Mirror Precautions	100
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror	100
Exterior Mirrors	
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	102
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	102
Instrument Cluster	
Instrument Cluster Overview	103
Tachometer	103
Speedometer	103
Fuel Gauge	103
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	104
What Is the Information Bar	104
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	104
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	104
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	106
Instrument Cluster Indicators	107
Instrument Cluster Display	
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu	109
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display	110
Fuel Economy Display	110
Personalized Settings	
Changing the Language	111
Changing the Measurement Unit	111
Changing the Temperature Unit	111
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	111
Trip Computer	
Accessing the Trip Computer	112
Resetting the Trip Computer	112
Trip Data	112
Remote Start - Automatic Transmission	
What Is Remote Start	113

Table of Contents

Remote Start Limitations	113
Enabling Remote Start	113
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle	113
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel	113
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel	114

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Switching Climate Control On and Off	115
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	115
Switching Defrost On and Off	115
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	115
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	115
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	115
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	116
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	116
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	116
Setting the Temperature	116
Directing the Flow of Air	116
Climate Control Hints	117

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	118
--	-----

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	118
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	118
Switching Defrost On and Off	118
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	118
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	119
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	119
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	119
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	119
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	119
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	119
Setting the Temperature	120
Directing the Flow of Air	120
Auto Mode	120
Climate Control Hints	122

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	124
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	124
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	124
Switching Defrost On and Off	124
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	124
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	125
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	125
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	125
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	125

Table of Contents

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	125
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	125
Setting the Temperature	126
Directing the Flow of Air	126
Auto Mode	126
Climate Control Hints	127

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	129
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	129
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	129
Switching Defrost On and Off	129
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	129
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	129
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	130
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	130
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	130
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	130
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	130
Setting the Temperature	131
Directing the Flow of Air	131
Climate Control Hints	131

Rear Passenger Climate Control

Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control	133
Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control	133
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off	133
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	133
Setting the Temperature	134
Directing the Flow of Air	134
Rear Auto Mode	134
Rear Passenger Climate Control Indicators	135

Auxiliary Heater - LHD

What Is the Auxiliary Heater	136
Auxiliary Heater Precautions	136
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off	136
Auxiliary Heater Indicators	136

Parking Heater - LHD

What Is the Parking Heater	137
Parking Heater Precautions	137
Parking Heater Limitations	137
Parking Heater Settings	137
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control	138
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators	139
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery	139
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting	140

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	141
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	141

Table of Contents

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	143
Sitting in the Correct Position	143
Manual Seats	144
Power Seats	148
Heated Seats	151

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	153
Heated Seats	157
Rear Seats Videos	158

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	159
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	160
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	160
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	161

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	162
Playing Media Using the USB Port	162
Charging a Device	162

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	164
Power Outlet Precautions	164
Power Outlet Limitations	164
Locating the Power Outlets	164
Power Outlet Indicators	164

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	166
Power Outlet Precautions	166
Locating the Power Outlets	166

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	167
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	167
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	167
Charging a Wireless Device	168

Storage

Cup Holders	169
Overhead Storage	169
Under Seat Storage	169

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	171
Push Button Ignition Switch	171
Starting the Engine	172
Stopping the Engine	173
Automatic Engine Stop	174
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	175
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	175

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	178
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	178
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	178
Stopping the Engine	178
Restarting the Engine	178

Table of Contents

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	179	Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	194
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	179	Selective Catalytic Reduction System	
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	179	What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System	195
Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission		How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work	195
What Is Auto-Start-Stop	181	Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions	195
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	181	Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements	195
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	181	Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines	195
Stopping the Engine	181	Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank	196
Restarting the Engine	181	Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level	198
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	182	Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status	198
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	182	Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption	198
Fuel and Refueling		AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	198
Fuel and Refueling Precautions	184	Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting	199
Fuel Quality	184	Manual Transmission	
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	185	Manual Transmission Precautions	202
Running Out of Fuel	185	Shifting Into Reverse	202
Refueling	186	Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	202
Fuel Tank Capacity	188	Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	202
Fuel Consumption Regulations	189	Clutch Fluid Specification	202
Fuel Consumption Figures	189	Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	203
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings	190	Automatic Transmission	
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	190	Automatic Transmission Precautions	204
Diesel Particulate Filter		Automatic Transmission Positions	204
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter	191	Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear	205
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work	191		
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions	191		
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements	192		
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration	192		

Table of Contents

Automatic Transmission Position Indicators	205
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators	205
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	206
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	206
Manually Shifting Gears	206
Temporary Neutral Mode	207
Automatic Return to Park (P)	208
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	209

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	210
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	210
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	210
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	210

Brakes

Brake Precautions	211
Anti-Lock Braking System	211
Brake Over Accelerator	211
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	211
Checking the Brake Fluid	211
Brake Fluid Specification	212
Brakes – Troubleshooting	212

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	214
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	214
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	214
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	214
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	215
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	215

Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	215
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	215
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	215

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	217
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	217
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	217
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	218
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	218
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	218
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	219

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	221
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	221
Hill Start Assist Precautions	221
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off	221
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	221

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	222
Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Manual Transmission	222
Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Automatic Transmission	222
Using Auto Hold	222
Auto Hold Indicators	223

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	224
How Does Traction Control Work	224
Switching Traction Control On and Off	224

Table of Contents

Traction Control Indicator	224	360 Degree Camera Limitations	236
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	224	Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	236
Stability Control		360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	237
What Is Stability Control	225	Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off	238
How Does Stability Control Work	225	Switching the 360 Degree Camera View	238
Switching Stability Control On and Off	225		
Stability Control Indicator	225		
Parking Aids			
Parking Aid Precautions	226		
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	226		
Rear Parking Aid	227		
Front Parking Aid	227		
Side Parking Aid	228		
Parking Aid Indicators	230		
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	230		
Rear View Camera			
What Is the Rear View Camera	232		
Rear View Camera Precautions	232		
Rear View Camera Limitations	232		
Locating the Rear View Camera	232		
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	233		
Rear View Camera Settings	233		
180 Degree Camera			
What Is the 180 Degree Camera	235		
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work	235		
180 Degree Camera Precautions	235		
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off	235		
360 Degree Camera			
What Is the 360 Degree Camera	236		
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	236		
360 Degree Camera Precautions	236		
		Active Park Assist	
		What Is Active Park Assist	240
		Active Park Assist Precautions	240
		Switching Active Park Assist On and Off	240
		Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist	240
		Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist	241
		Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist	241
		Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist	242
		Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist	243
		Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist	243
		Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting	243
		Cruise Control	
		What Is Cruise Control	245
		Switching Cruise Control On and Off	245
		Setting the Cruise Control Speed	245
		Canceling the Set Speed	246
		Resuming the Set Speed	246
		Cruise Control Indicators	246

Table of Contents

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	247
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	247
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	247
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	248
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	250
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	250
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	250
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	251
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	251
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	252
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	253
Canceling the Set Speed	254
Resuming the Set Speed	254
Overriding the Set Speed	255
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	255
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	255
Lane Centering	255
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	258
Predictive Speed Assist	259

Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	262
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	262

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control	264
Selecting a Drive Mode	264
Drive Modes	264
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	265

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information	266
Local Hazard Information Precautions	266
Enabling Local Hazard Information	266
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	266

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work	267
Speed Limiter Precautions	267
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off	267
Setting the Speed Limit	267
Changing the Set Speed Limit	267
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	267
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	267
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	268
Speed Limiter Indicators	268
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	268

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	269
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	269
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	269

Table of Contents

Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	269	Blind Spot Information System Precautions	280
Setting the Speed Limit	269	Blind Spot Information System Limitations	280
Changing the Set Speed Limit	270	Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission	281
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	270	Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission	281
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	270	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	281
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	270	Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	281
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	270	Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	282
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	270	Blind Spot Information System Indicators	283
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	270	Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	283
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	271		
Lane Keeping System		Exit Warning	
What Is the Lane Keeping System	272	What is Exit Warning	285
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	272	How Does Exit Warning Work	285
Lane Keeping System Precautions	272	Exit Warning Precautions	285
Lane Keeping System Limitations	272	Exit Warning Limitations	285
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	273	Exit Warning Indicators	285
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	273	Switching Exit Warning On and Off	286
Lane Keeping System Settings	273	Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	286
Aid Mode	273	Exit Warning - Troubleshooting	287
Alert and Aid Mode	274		
Lane Keeping System Indicators	274	Cross Traffic Alert	
Blind Spot Assist	275	What Is Cross Traffic Alert	288
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	277	How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	288
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	279	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	288
		Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	288
		Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	289
		Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	289
		Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage	289
		Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	290
Blind Spot Information System			
What Is Blind Spot Information System	280		
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	280		

Table of Contents

Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	290
---	-----

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	291
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	291
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	292
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	292
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	292
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	293
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	293
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	293
Distance Indication	294
Forward Collision Warning	295
Automatic Emergency Braking	295
Evasive Steering Assist	295
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	296

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	298
How Does Driver Alert Work	298
Driver Alert Precautions	298
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	298
Resetting Driver Alert	298
Driver Alert Indicators	299
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	299

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	300
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	300
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	300

Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	300
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	300
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning	301
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change	301
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	302

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	303
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	303
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	303
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	303
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	303
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	304

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	305
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack	305
Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack	306

Rear Cargo Area

Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	308
-------------------------------------	-----

Connecting a Trailer

Tow Ball	310
Connecting a Trailer	312
Trailer Lighting Check	313
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	314

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions	315
------------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions	316
Towing a Trailer Limitations	316
Loading Your Trailer	316
Trailer Towing Hints	317
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft	317
Towing Weights and Dimensions	317

Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	320
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	320

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions	321
Driving on Snow and Ice	321
Breaking-In	321
Driving Economically	321
Driving in Special Conditions	322
Driving Through Shallow Water	323
Floor Mats	323

Crash and Breakdown Information

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	325
Jump Starting the Vehicle	325
Post-Crash Alert System	327
Post-Collision Braking	327
Automatic Crash Shutoff	327
Recovery Towing	328
Fail-Safe Cooling	329

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	331
Emergency Towing	331

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	332
---------------------------------------	-----

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit	333
Storing a Warning Triangle	333

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	334
Under Hood Fuse Box	334
Interior Fuse Box	339
High Current Fuse Box	342
Identifying Fuse Types	342
Fuses – Troubleshooting	342

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	343
Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD	343
Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD	344
Under Hood Overview - LHD	347
Under Hood Overview - RHD	348
Engine Oil	349
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap	350
Engine Cooling Fan	351
Coolant	351
12V Battery	355
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	357
Adjusting the Headlamps	358
Exterior Bulbs	359
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check	366

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	367
Cleaning the Interior	369
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	371
Waxing Your Vehicle	371

Table of Contents

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	372
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	373

Wheel and Tire Information

Using Summer Tires	374
Using Winter Tires	374
Using Snow Chains	374

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	376
Inflating the Tires	376
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus	376
Tire Pressure Specifications - Van	378
Tire Pressure Specifications - Camper	380
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	383
Tire Rotation	383

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	385
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	385
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	385
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	385
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	386

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	391
Viewing the Tire Pressures	391

Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	392

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	394
Wheel Nuts	401

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications	402
Vehicle Dimensions	403
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification	403
Cooling System Capacity and Specification	404
Fuel Tank Capacity	405
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification	406
Washer Fluid Specification	406
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	407
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	408
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	408
Brake Fluid Specification	408
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification	409

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	410
Vehicle Identification Plate	410

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	412
Connected Vehicle Requirements	412
Connected Vehicle Limitations	412
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	412

Table of Contents

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	412	Voice Interaction Examples	423
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	413	Alexa Built-In	
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot		What is Alexa Built-In	425
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	415	Alexa Built-In Requirements	425
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	415	Signing In to Your Account	425
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	416	Using Alexa Built-In	425
		Alexa Built-In Settings	425
Audio System		Phone	
Audio System Precautions	417	Phone Precautions	427
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	417	Connecting Your Phone	427
Selecting the Audio Source	417	Phone Menu	427
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source	417	Making and Receiving a Phone Call	429
Adjusting the Volume	417	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	430
Setting a Memory Preset	417	Bluetooth®	
Muting the Audio	417	Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	431
Scrolling Through Menu Items	418	Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	431
Selecting a Menu Item	418	Apps	
Adjusting the Sound Settings	418	App Precautions	432
Setting the Clock and Date	418	App Requirements	432
AM/FM Radio	418	Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	432
Switching the Display On and Off	419	Enabling Apps on an Android Device	432
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	419	Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	432
		Switching Android Auto On and Off	433
Center Display Overview		Navigation	
Center Display Precautions	421	Accessing Navigation	434
Center Display Limitations	421	Navigation Map Updates	434
Status Bar	421	Adjusting the Map	434
Information On Demand Screen	422	Setting a Destination	434
Rebooting the Center Display	422	Waypoints	435
		Route Guidance	435
Voice Interaction		Trailer Towing Navigation	435
What is Voice Interaction	423		
Setting the Wake Word	423		
Beginning a Voice Interaction	423		

Table of Contents

Driver Identification

How Does Driver Identification Work	437
Signing In as a Driver	437
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting	437

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	438
Software Update Settings	438
Software Update Indicators	439

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	440
---------------------------------	-----

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	441
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	441
Declaration of Conformity	441
REACH	441
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	442
Replacement Parts Recommendation	476
Mobile Communications Equipment	477
eCall User Information	478
End User License Agreement	481
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle	506

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	507
-------------------------------------	-----

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

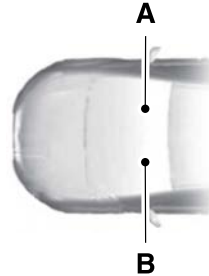
Note: This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 412).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Precautions** (page 432). See **App Requirements** (page 432).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 440).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

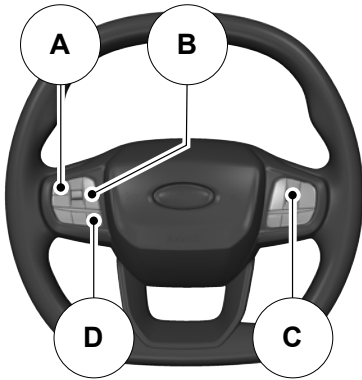
France Only



Points de collecte sur www.quefairedemesdechets.fr et www.ford.fr

Visual Search

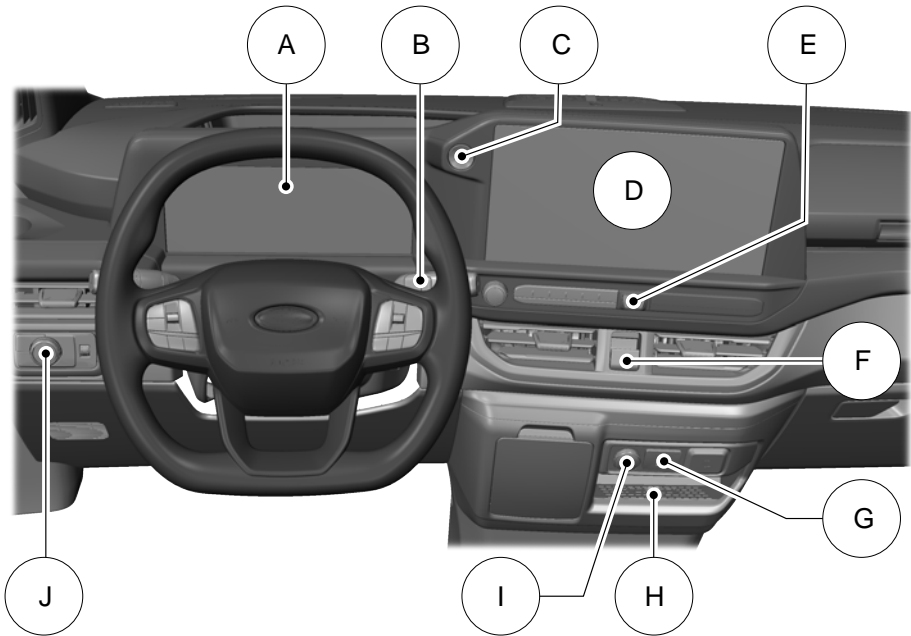
STEERING WHEEL



- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 245).
- B See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 273).
- C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 109).
- D See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 423).

Visual Search

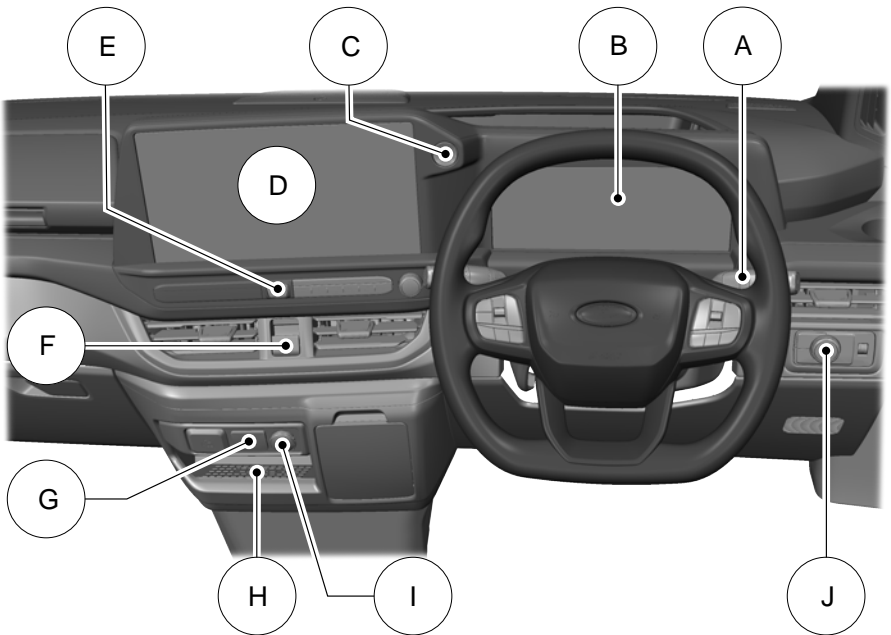
INSTRUMENT PANEL - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 205).
- C See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 171).
- D See **Status Bar** (page 421).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 325).
- F See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 214).
- G See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 162).
- H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- I See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 166).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 81).

Visual Search

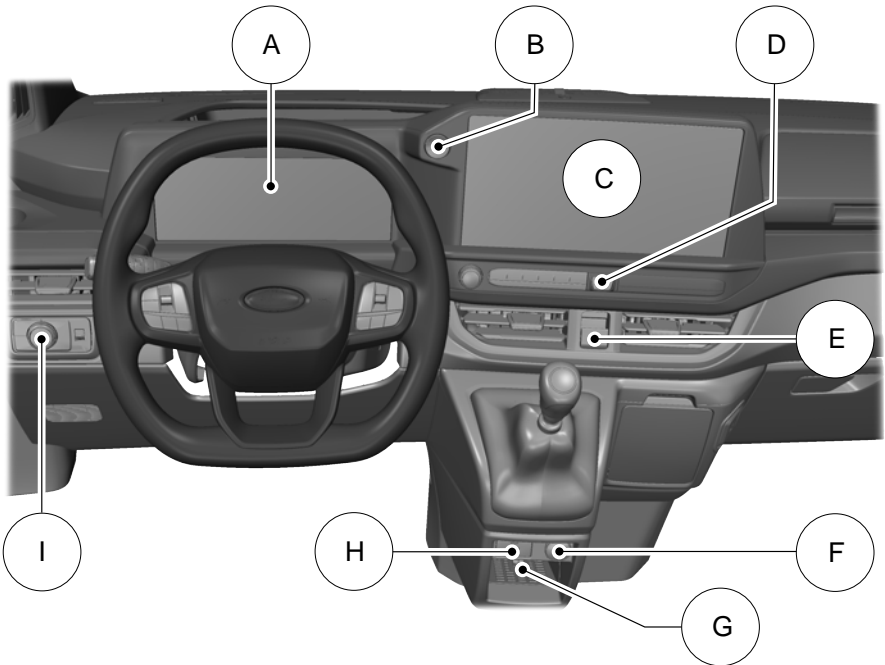
INSTRUMENT PANEL - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD



- A See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 205).
- B See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- C See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 171).
- D See **Status Bar** (page 421).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 325).
- F See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 214).
- G See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 162).
- H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- I See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 166).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 81).

Visual Search

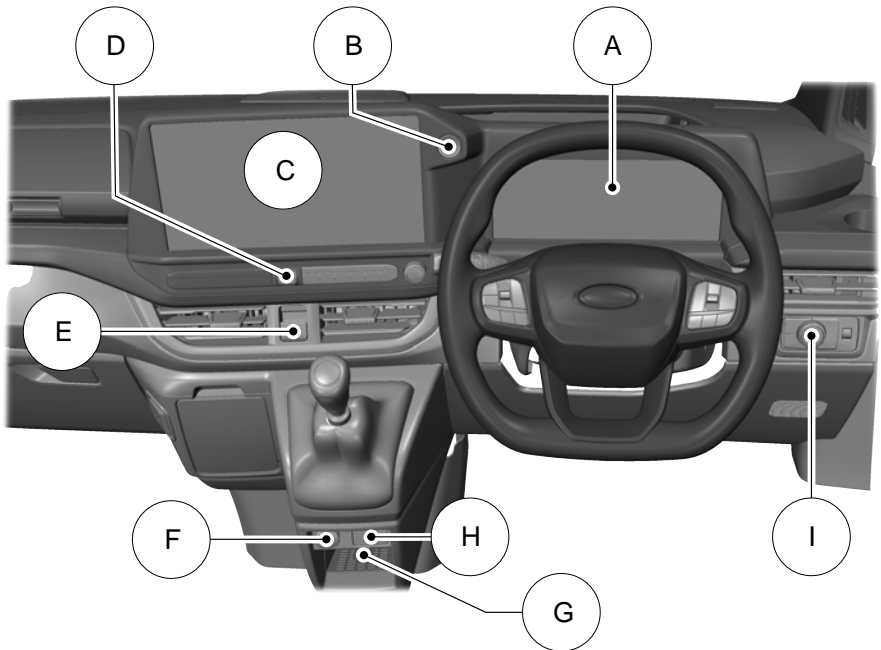
INSTRUMENT PANEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, LHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 171).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 421).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 325).
- E See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 214).
- F See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 166).
- G See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 162).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 81).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 171).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 421).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 325).
- E See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 214).
- F See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 166).
- G See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 162).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 81).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



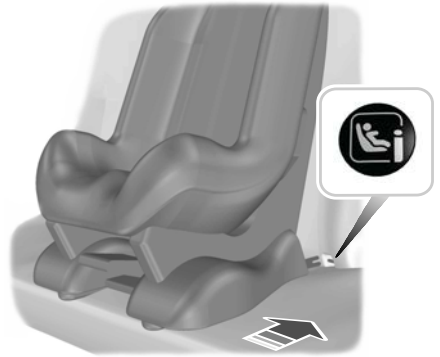
WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

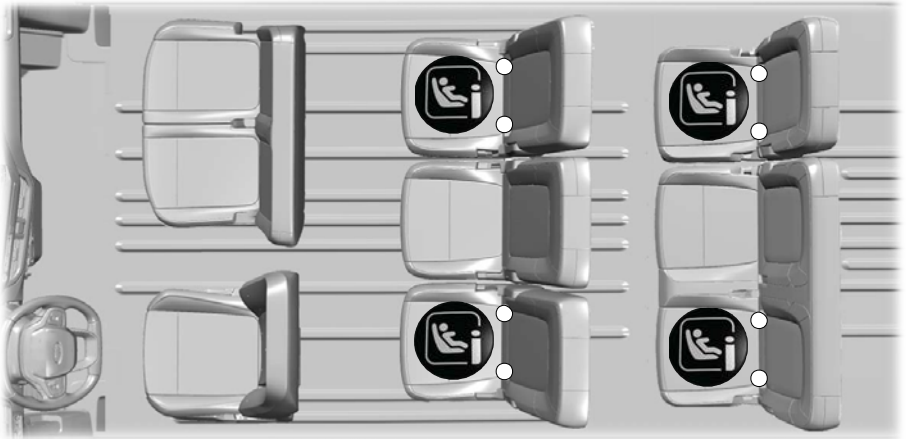
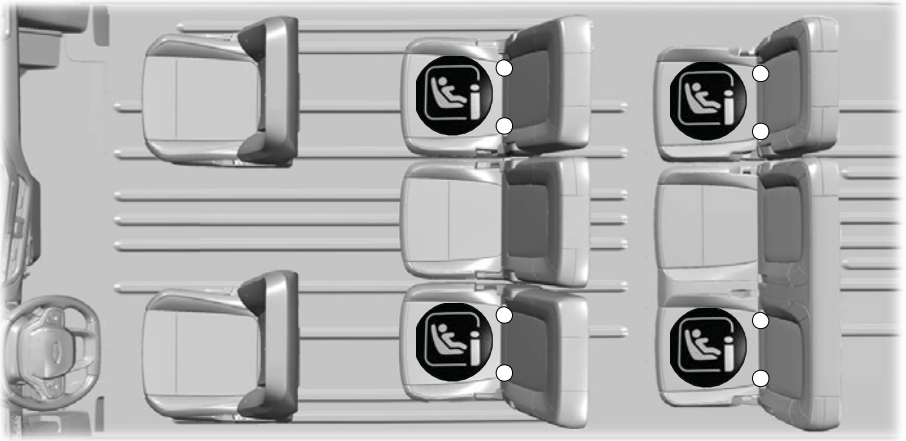
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

Child Safety



Child Safety

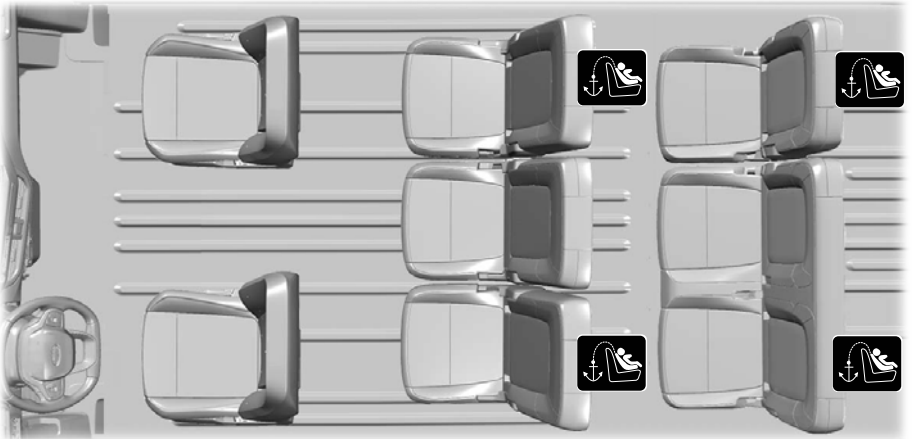
LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



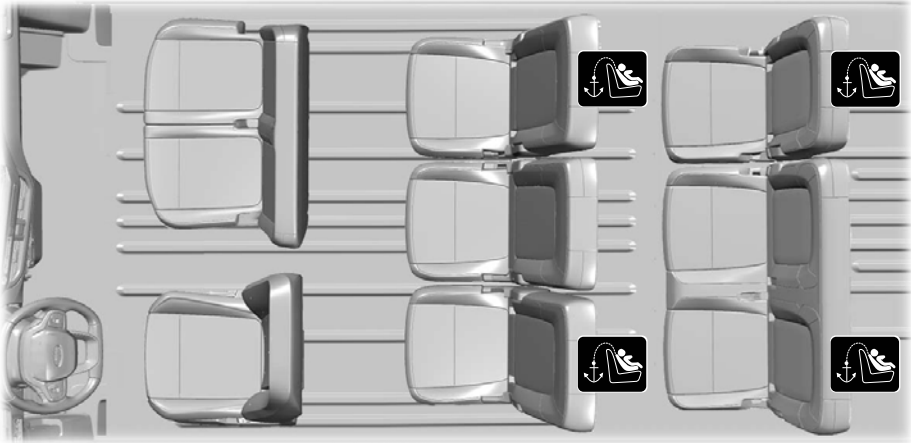
WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

For child restraints with a top tether the tether anchor point is on the back of the seat.



Child Safety



Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Vehicle Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	15–25 kg (33–55lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger outboard seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger center seat with airbag OFF .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Second row seats - forward facing.	U	U	U	U	U
Second row seats - rearward facing. ²	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Third row seats.	U	U	U	U	U

¹We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

²Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size or ISOFIX label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Second row outboard seats - forward facing - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	X	E ³	C, D, E ³	A, B, B1 ³	C, D ³
	Fixture.	X	R1 ³	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ³	F2, F2X, F3 ³	R2X, R2, R3 ³
	Seat type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Second row outboard seats - rearward facing - ISOFIX. ²	Size class. ¹	X	X	X	A, B, B1 ³	X
	Fixture.	X	X	X	F2, F2X, F3 ³	X
	Seat type.	X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
Second row center seat.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					
Third row outboard seats - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	X	E ³	C, D, E ³	A, B, B1 ³	C, D ³

Child Safety

Vehicle Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
	Fixture.	X	R1 ³	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ³	F2, F2X, F3 ³	R2X, R2, R3 ³
	Seat type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Third row center seat - ISOFIX.	Size class. ¹	No ISOFIX.				
	Seat type.					

¹ As defined by ECE-R16.

² Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

³ The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Note: *If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.*

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

The following table provides information suitable for vehicle seats that have an i-Size label attached.

Vehicle Seating Positions	Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON	i-Size Child Restraint Systems	Largest Suitable Booster Fixture (B2,B3)
Front passenger seats.	X	X	B2, B3
Second row outboard single seats - forward facing.	-	i-U	B2, B3
Second row outboard single seats - rearward facing. ¹	-	X	B2, B3
Second row single center seat - forward and rearward facing.	-	X	B2, B3
Third row outboard seats.	-	i-U	B2, B3
Third row center seats.	-	X	B2, B3

¹ Vehicles with second row reversible seats.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix M i-Size. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar region to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.

You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

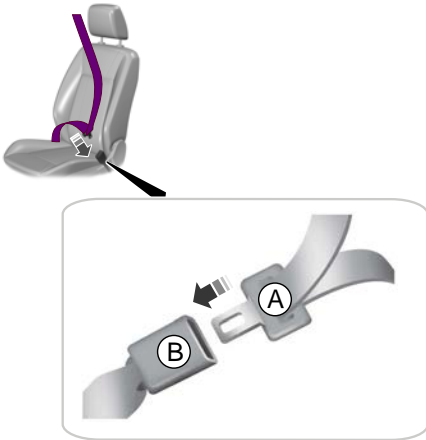


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

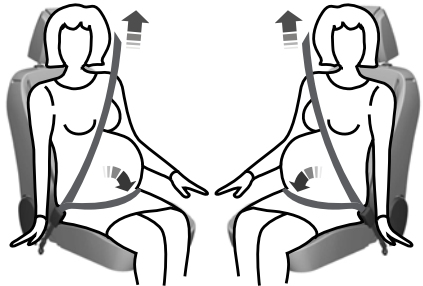
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



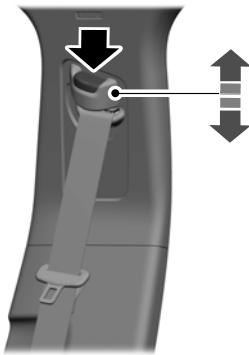
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelts

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front or rear seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A front or rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

The seatbelt reminder must be paired with the seats by an authorized dealer if:

- New seats are installed in the vehicle.
- Seats from another identical vehicle are installed.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



A



C



B



D

A Seatbelt fastened.

B Seatbelt not fastened.

Seatbelts

- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Seat Belts**.

Note: When you check the seatbelt status and an installed rear seat does not appear in the instrument cluster display, please visit an authorized dealer.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

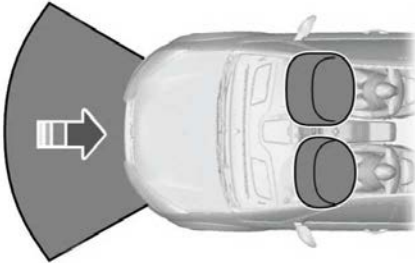
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear seat belt buckle Battery low Service required	The battery has to be replaced. Contact an authorized dealer.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Airbags

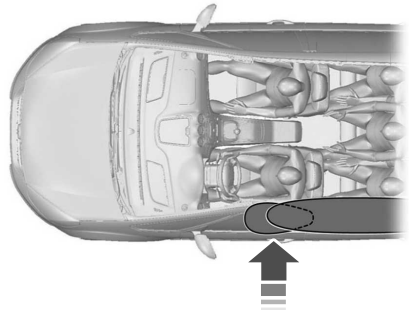


The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.


AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS


WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.


WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


Airbags


 **WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.


PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS



The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

 **WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Passenger Airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

Airbags

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Passenger Airbag**.
4. Select **On**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 478).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 21).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.
3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: *Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.*

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

eCall

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

Keys and Remote Controls



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

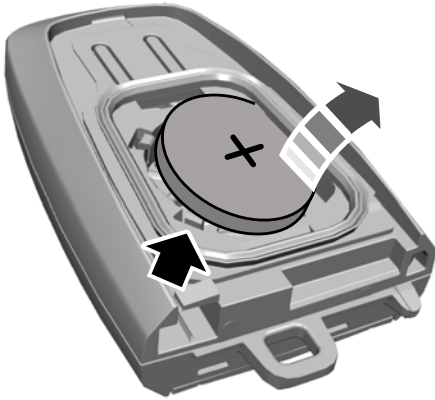


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.

4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Keys and Remote Controls

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?

- This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamp confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See **Keyless Entry** (page 67).

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.



Press the button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash three times.

Note: You can double lock your vehicle with the key. Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

Two-Stage Configurable Unlocking Options

A configurable unlocking option is set at the time of the vehicle purchase. This determines which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the cargo release button on the remote control once or twice.

Note: If you want to change your current unlocking configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

Option 1

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single or double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 2

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front and the second row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 3

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Doors and Locks

Option 4

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *Unlock only unlocks driver door.*

Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Note: *Locking performs a central lock of all doors.*

What Are TVL Mechanical Locks

Optional mechanical locking system that provides additional security to passenger and cargo doors. For more information, see the TVL website.

Note: *Do not engage the TVL locks when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle, excluding the relock. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside when the TVL locks are engaged.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Opening the Double Rear Doors



Doors and Locks

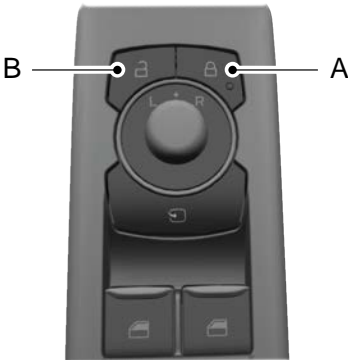
Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors

You can open the rear doors to three angles, 45°, 90° and 180°. At all these three angle points you feel a strong resistance.

Note: If you open the rear doors the rear lights might be covered. Make sure the vehicle is visible from the rear in compliance with local regulations, for example use a warning triangle if necessary.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

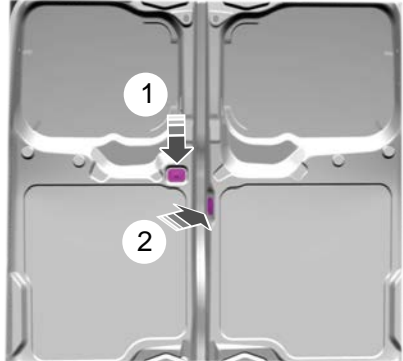


- A Lock
- B Unlock

Note: LED illuminates for five minutes to confirm locked status. LED only illuminates if all doors are locked. If you open any door using the interior handle, the LED extinguishes.

Note: After locking, the unlock button remains operative for a short period of time.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Press the first button two times within three seconds to open the primary door.
2. Press the second button to open the secondary door.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

By default, your vehicle is delivered with two-stage unlock activated.

You can change between the one-stage and two-stage unlocking modes using the center display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Global Unlock** on or off.

Doors and Locks

One-Stage Unlock

All doors unlock when you press the unlock button on the remote control once.

Rear side doors and cargo doors unlock when you press the cargo unlock button on the remote control once.

To switch to one-stage unlock, press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Two-Stage Unlock

A single or double press of the unlock button or cargo release button unlocks different doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 54).

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. All the doors are closed and locked and your vehicle exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off.

Note: *If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle doors when you start driving.

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

SWITCHING AUTOLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Lock** on or off.

Doors and Locks

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control and a door is open.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The doors relock to central lock and the alarm returns to its previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the power sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not open or close the power sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power sliding door, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that people and pets are not in the proximity of the sliding door opening.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

Note: If you operate the sliding door often during a short period of time, the system could become not available for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

Allow the system to open the sliding door. Do not manually push or pull the sliding door when it is moving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

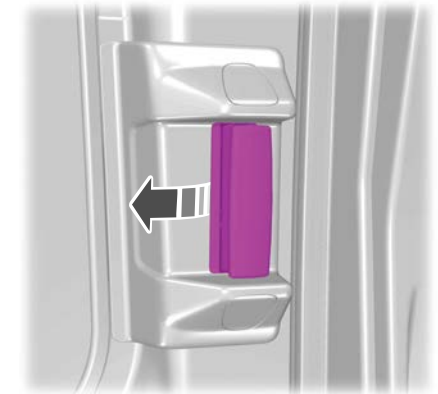
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



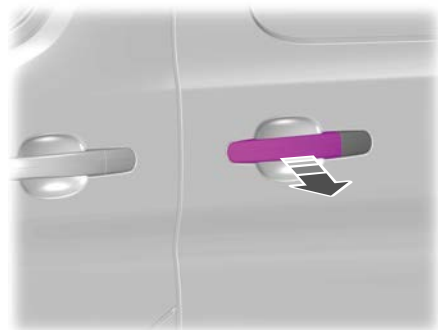
Press the button on the instrument panel to open the sliding door.

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

Pull and release the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

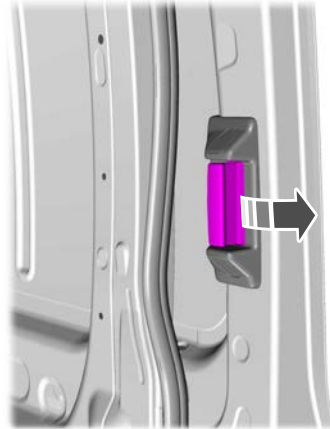
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



Press the button on the instrument panel to close the sliding door. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the interior sliding door handle to close the sliding door.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull and release the exterior door handle to close the sliding door.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

STOPPING THE SLIDING DOOR MOVEMENT

You can stop the sliding door movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the sliding door button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Pressing the sliding door button on the instrument panel.
- Pulling the sliding door interior or exterior door handle.

RESETTING THE POWER SLIDING DOOR

Make sure that you complete the procedure within 10 seconds.

To reset the power sliding door do the following:

1. Manually close the sliding door.

Note: Make sure that the sliding door is fully closed.

2. Pull the interior door handle in closing direction three times within three seconds.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

SLIDING DOOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right power sliding door Calibration needed	The system has malfunctioned. Manually close the power sliding door. Pull and release the power sliding door handle to open the power sliding door. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left Power Sliding Door Calibration Needed	
Right rear door motor disconnected See manual	The system has malfunctioned. Reset the power sliding door. See Resetting the Power Sliding Door (page 62). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left rear door motor disconnected See manual	

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the power sliding door stop moving?

The power sliding door stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the power sliding door starts moving in the opposite direction. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the power sliding door.

Why is the power sliding door moving with reduced speed?

The power sliding door power was interrupted while left open. Fully close the power sliding door using the button on the instrument panel or the power sliding door handles. Open the power sliding door as normal. If the power sliding door still operates with reduced speed, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why can I not close the power sliding door?

If the power sliding door does not close, restart the engine and then close it as normal. See **Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 61). If the power sliding door still does not close, manually close the power sliding door and then open it as normal. If the power sliding door still does not close, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

What can I do if the power sliding door does not operate as normal?

If there is a malfunction on the power sliding door, restart the engine.

How can I open the sliding door if the system loses power?

If the sliding door loses power, you could need to apply more force when trying to open it. Push the back of the sliding door and the interior sliding door handle in opening direction at the same time and open it as normal.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



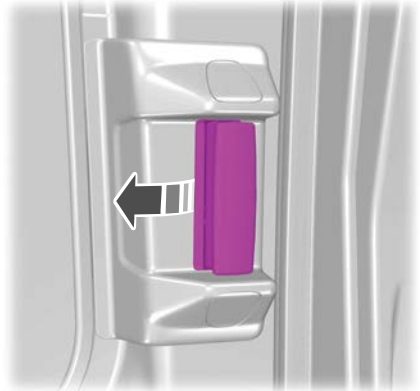
WARNING: Do not open or close the sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: When opening the sliding door make sure you fully open it until you hear a click. This way the door stop engage can protect you from accidentally closing.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

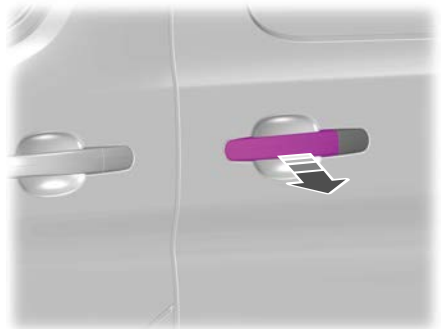
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the interior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

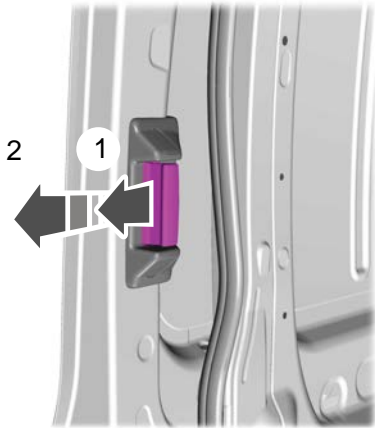


Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Manual Sliding Door

Pull the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

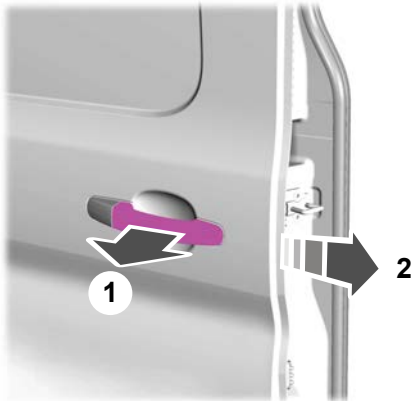
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Pull the interior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



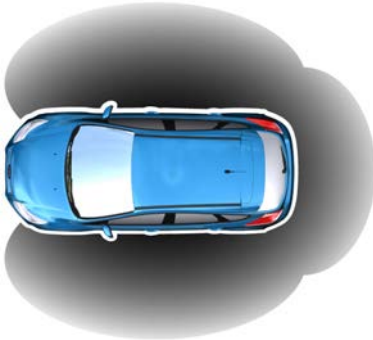
1. Pull the exterior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and rear doors.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

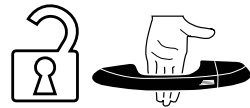
Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.

Keyless Entry



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Press the sensor twice in 3 seconds to double lock your vehicle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, if the key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 67). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Liftgate

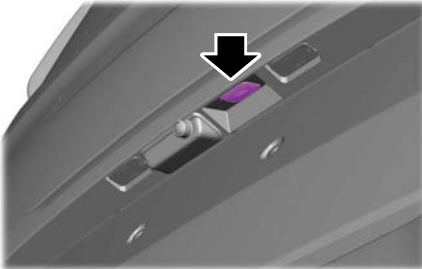
LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Unlock the liftgate using the remote control or power door unlock button.

Note: If an authorized passive key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate opens when you press the liftgate control button.

2. Press the control button on the liftgate handle.
3. Open the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

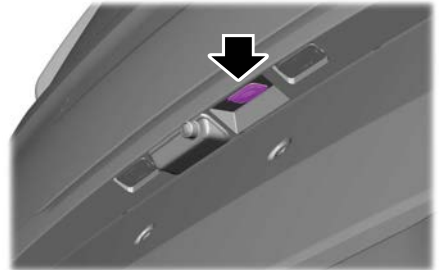
Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button once.

Note: After 45 seconds, if the door remains closed it relocks.



1. Press the button on the liftgate handle.
2. Open the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.*

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to motion sensors on .*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

Security

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm system	

Security

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 143).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.

Steering Wheel



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: *You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.*

Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

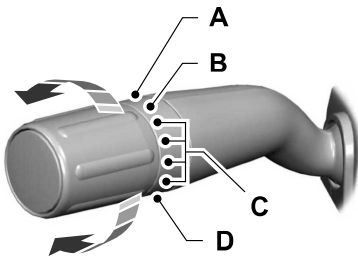
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 78). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 78).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.

- C Intermittent wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control.

AUTOWIPERS

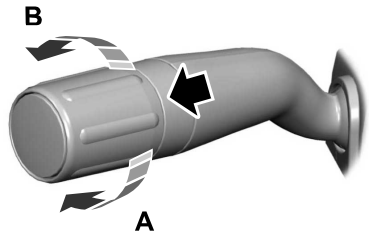
WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A Low sensitivity.
- B High sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

Wipers and Washers

Note: Use intermittent wipe positions to adjust the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Long wipe interval.
- C Short wipe interval.

Rotate the control to adjust the wipe interval.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

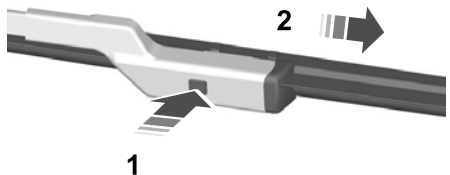


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Wipers and Washers

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

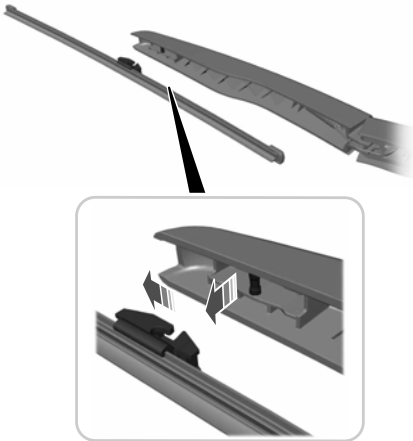
2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

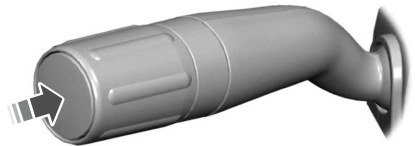
Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position and hold it to operate the rear window washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 406).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

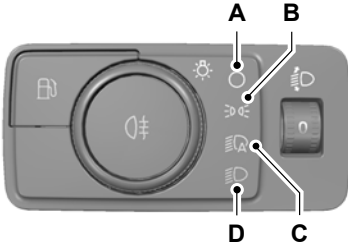
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 78). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 78). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 79).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



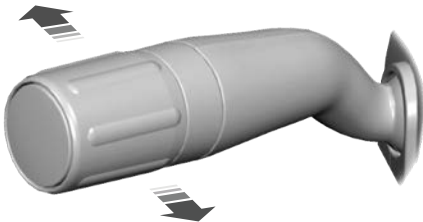
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS

WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

Exterior Lighting



Scroll the switch up or down to adjust the level of headlamps.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exterior Lighting

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

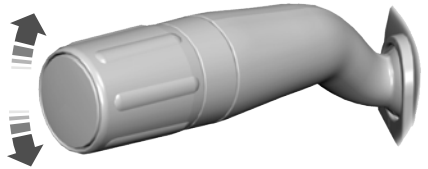
Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

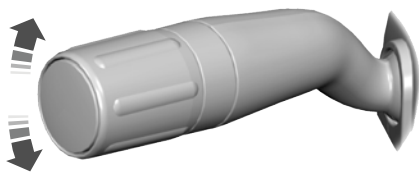
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.


Exterior Lighting

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.



2.  Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps.

USING ALL WEATHER LAMPS



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: The system turns off when your vehicle speed reaches approximately 75 km/h (47 mph).

Note: When your vehicle speed is lower than approximately 75 km/h (47 mph), the system turns on.

All Weather Lamps Indicator




It illuminates when all weather lamps are on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

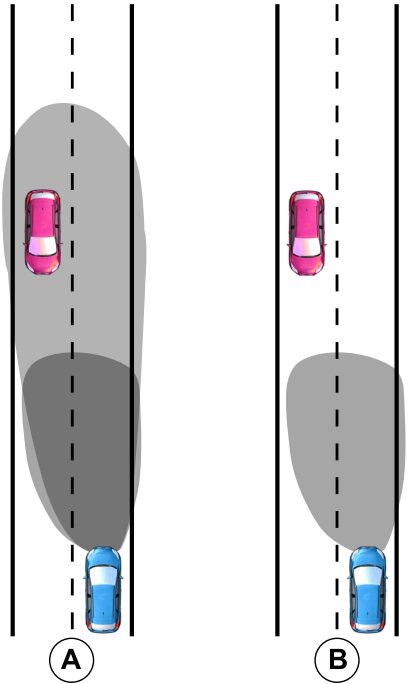
Exterior Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.




- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.


AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS




WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting

 **WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

 **WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

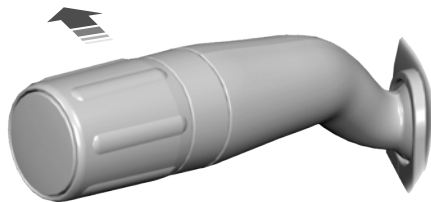
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Exterior Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

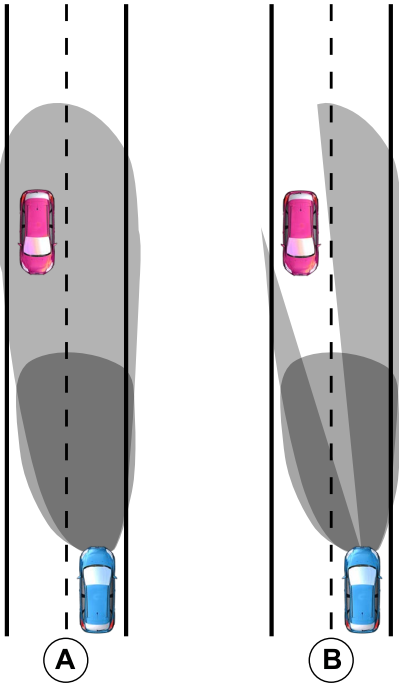
Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

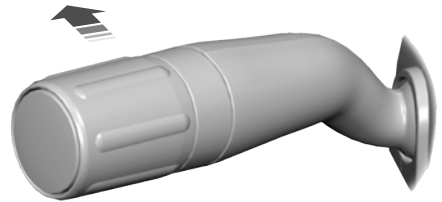
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Glare-Free Lighting** on or off.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

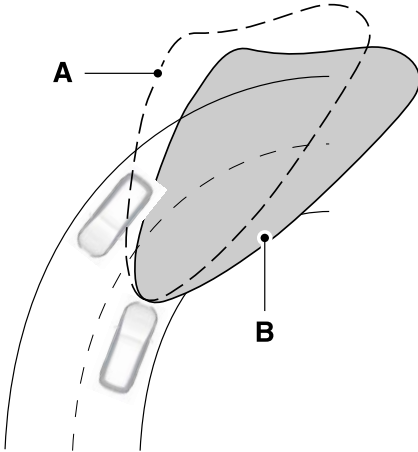
HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

Adaptive front lighting adapts when you are steering around a curve, or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve or traffic signs indicating an intersection.

Note: *Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.*

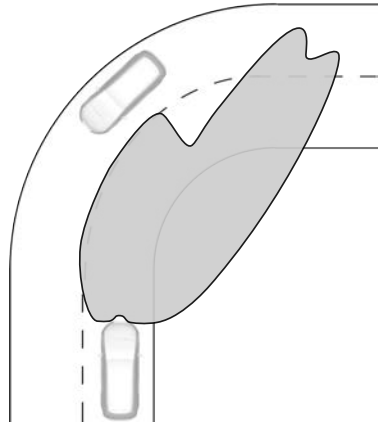
Exterior Lighting

Steering Around a Curve

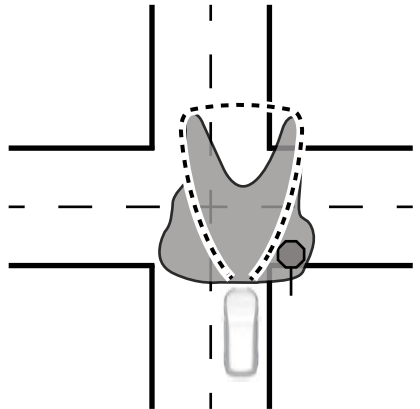


- A Without adaptive front lighting.
- B With adaptive front lighting.

Camera Detects Lane Markings



Camera Detects Traffic Signs



The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph).

Exterior Lighting

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Adaptive Headlamps Setup**.
5. Select a setting.

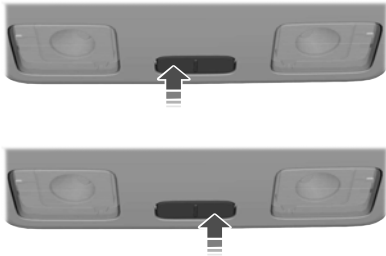
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the lamp lens to switch the office lamps on or off.

Press and hold the lamp lens to dim the office lamps.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Office Lamps

Office lamps provide a bright lighting that allows you to work in your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

Interior Lighting

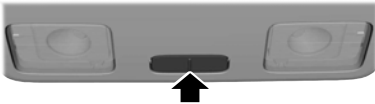
Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Cockpit Illumination**.
5. Drag the slider left or right.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

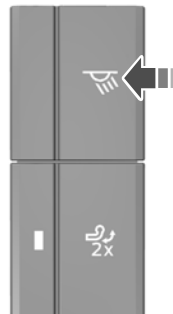
CARGO LAMPS

SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON AND OFF

The cargo lamps turn on automatically when a door is open.

The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time to prevent the battery from running out of charge.

Super Bright Cargo Lamps



Interior Lighting

Press the button inside the cargo area to switch the cargo lamps on or off when the rear cargo door or the liftgate is open.

Note: *The super bright cargo lamp is located in the roof above the rear cargo doors or on the inside of the liftgate depending on your vehicle options. The super bright cargo lamps illuminate the rear loading area of your vehicle.*

If the cargo lamps turned off to prevent the battery from running out of charge or you switched them off by pressing the button, reset the switch before switching the cargo lamps on. See **Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch** (page 95).

RESETTING THE CARGO LAMP SWITCH

To reset the switch, do one of the following:

- Lock or unlock a door.
- Open or close a front door.
- Switch the ignition on then off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE DRIVER WINDOW



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

Driver Side One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Driver Side One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting Driver Side One-Touch Close

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Lift the window control switch for one more second.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift the window control switch again for one more second.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE FRONT WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Windows



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Windows

Note: You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Close** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Windows

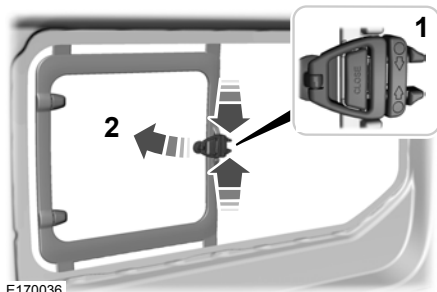
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

Note: If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE REAR QUARTER WINDOWS

Opening the Rear Quarter Windows



1. Press the unlock button to release the catch.

Note: Depending on the lock type fitted, you have to either press the unlock buttons together or down to release the catch.

2. Hold the catch and push the window open. Make sure the catch engages.

Note: There is an audible click when the catch engages.

Closing the Rear Quarter Windows

1. Hold and pull the catch to close the window.
2. Press the catch to engage the lock.

Note: There is an audible click when the lock engages.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

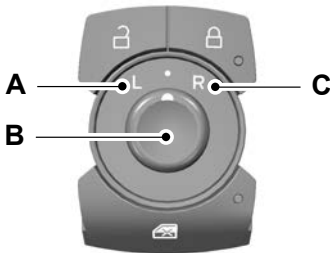
Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors auto-fold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control switch again.

The left and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on and off.

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the mirrors, perform the following steps:

1. By hand, fold or retract both mirrors.

Exterior Mirrors

- Using the power folding/power telescoping mirror control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
- Operate the power folding or power telescoping mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS



Press the button to fold the mirrors.

Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Note: *Do not manually fold or unfold power folding mirrors.*

Loose Mirror

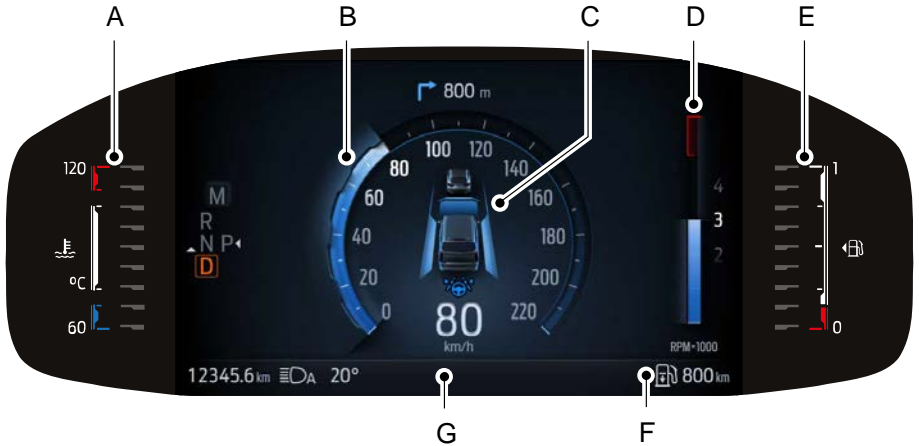
If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Instrument cluster display.
- D Tachometer.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Instrument Cluster

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Blind Spot Information System And Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp



If the system malfunctions, the warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake Pad Wear Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the brake pads have worn down to a predetermined limit. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates or flashes yellow when the electric parking brake requires service.



Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fuel Filter Service Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates amber when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects that the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or flashes when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 247).

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators



It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.



Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, the indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the indicator flashes.

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display, or the Sync display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Eco Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

Instrument Cluster

Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.

Mud/Ruts Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance,



fuel economy or lower emissions.

Slippery Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



It flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tow/Haul Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

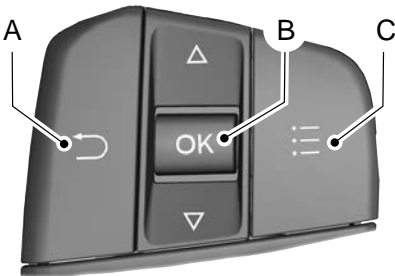
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.*

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Battery Charge
Now Playing
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
EV Coach
Tyre Pressure

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Right Gauge**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Note: *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 112).*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 110).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

Note: *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 112).*

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 412).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass app to start the vehicle.

- The vehicle locks the doors.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass app to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. press a setting

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 125).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
3. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct air toward the side windows.
5. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 125).

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 125).

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 125).

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release **A/C**.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls could look different from what you see here.

IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.


SWITCHING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS ON AND OFF

On the rear passenger climate control unit




Press the button.

On the touchscreen

1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.


2. Select **Rear**.

3.  Press the button.


 Press the button on the touchscreen to lock the rear passenger climate control unit.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

On the rear passenger climate control unit


 Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear passenger compartment.

On the touchscreen

1.  Press the button to activate the selection screen.

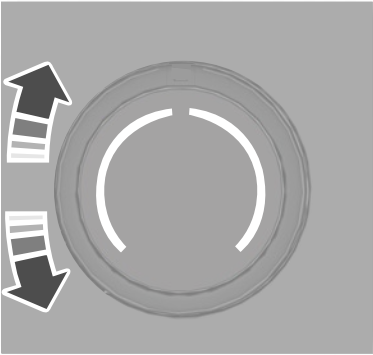
2. Select **Rear**.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

-  Slide the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear passenger compartment.


SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

On the rear passenger climate control unit



Turn the control.

On the touchscreen


-  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
- Select **Rear**.
-  Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.


DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing the flow of air is only controllable on the rear passenger climate control panel


Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents

- 
- When you direct air to the overhead air vents, the system distributes cold air.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

- 
- When you direct air to the footwell air vents, the system distributes hot air.


Directing Air to the Overhead and Footwell Air Vents

- 
- When you direct air to the overhead and footwell air vents, the system distributes warm air.


REAR AUTO MODE

SWITCHING REAR AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

On the rear passenger climate control unit

- 
- Press the button.


On the touchscreen

-  Press the button to activate the selection screen.
- Select **Rear**.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

3.  Press the button.

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL INDICATORS

-  When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Auxiliary Heater - LHD

WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

Note: *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.*

Note: *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

Note: *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Aux Heater** on or off.

AUXILIARY HEATER INDICATORS

Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Parking Heater - LHD

WHAT IS THE PARKING HEATER

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system assists the engine to reach operating temperature sooner. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

The system keeps the windshield clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.

PARKING HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure the heater exhaust outlet in front of the right-hand front tire is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.

Note: If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

Note: When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

PARKING HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

PARKING HEATER SETTINGS

SWITCHING CONTINUE HEAT ON

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Switch **Continue Heat** on or off.

Note: You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the checkbox in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.

SETTING THE PARKING HEATER TIMER

The system has three different modes that you can set.

Single Time

Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the parking heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time.

Parking Heater - LHD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Single Time**.
6. Set the date and time you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: *The date and time must be set before you can activate this mode.*

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

Recurring Time One

Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time One**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

Recurring Time Two

Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time Two**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

SWITCHING THE PARKING HEATER ON AND OFF WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

To start the heater, press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

To stop the heater, press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

Note: *Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.*

Note: *Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.*

Parking Heater - LHD

PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

Transmitter LED	Description
Green	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing green	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
Red	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing red	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.

Note: *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling your batteries.

CHANGING THE PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

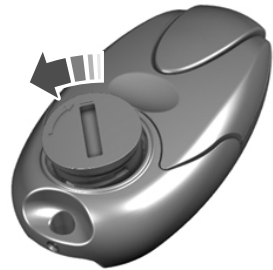


WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one three-volt lithium battery CR11108 or equivalent.



1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or coin, to unscrew and remove the battery cover.

Parking Heater - LHD



2. Remove the battery.
3. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
4. Replace the battery cover.

PARKING HEATER – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING HEATER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the fuel level is too low.
Park heater not started Low battery state of charge	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge.
Park heater not started Outside temperature too high	Displays if the outside temperature is too high.
Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days	If the vehicle has not been started in seven days or more before a programmed start, the timer is deleted and must be reset.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

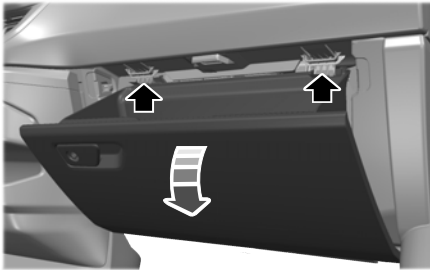
The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

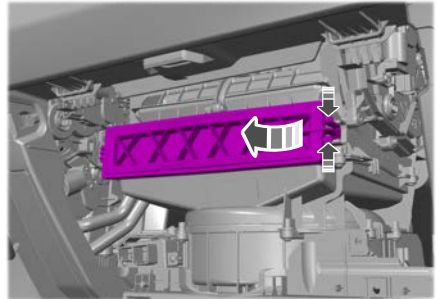
Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

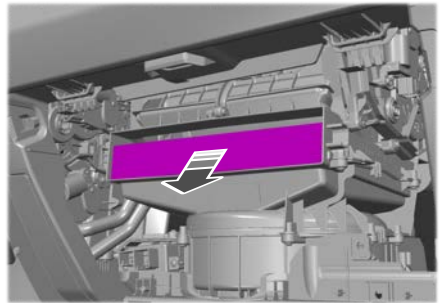
To access the cabin air filter:



1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Pinch the tab on the side of the air filter cover.
3. Open the cover.



4. Pull the cabin air filter toward you to remove it.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Interior Air Quality

Note: *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

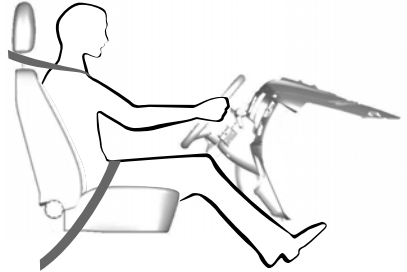
WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

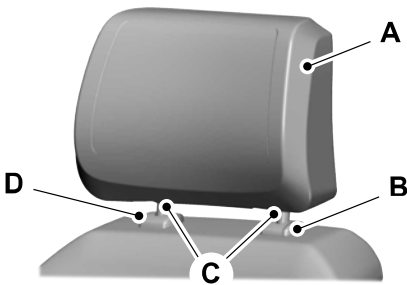
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

Front Seats



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again releases it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

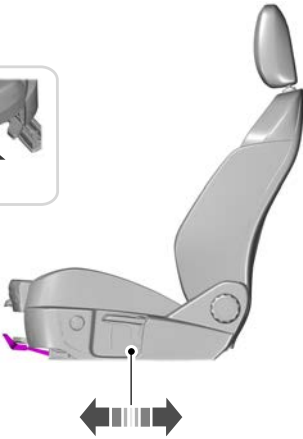
MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Front Seats

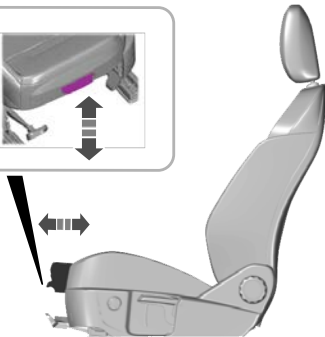
Tilting the Seat Cushion



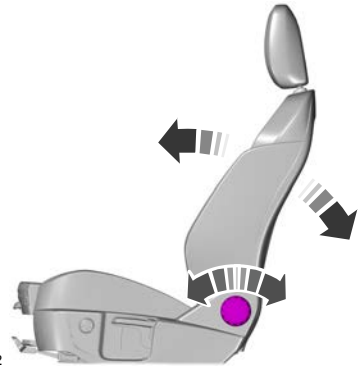
E265510

ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

Adjusting the Seat Cushion Backward and Forward



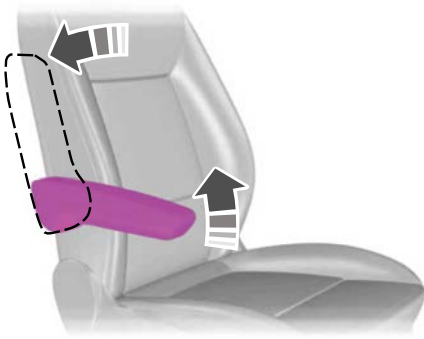
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



E265512

Front Seats

FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST

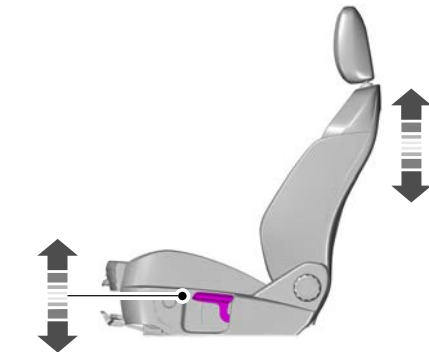


ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LUMBAR



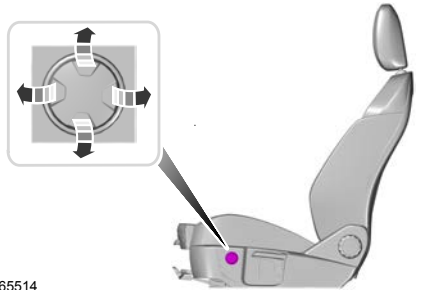
E249179

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



E265513

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT - VEHICLES WITH: POWER LUMBAR

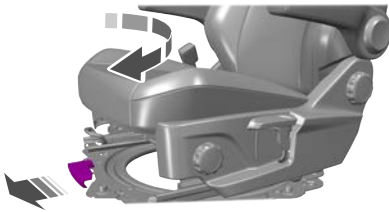


E265514

SWIVELING THE SEAT

⚠ WARNING: Make sure the seat locks into place and is facing forward when your vehicle is moving.

Front Seats



- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

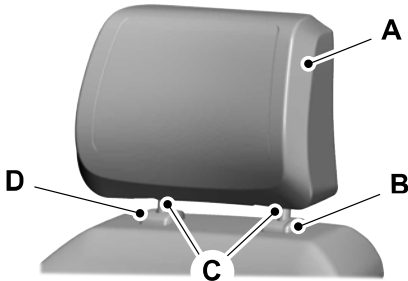
The seat can swivel through 180 degrees in an inboard direction.

You may need to adjust the seat to allow sufficient clearance for it to swivel in a single motion.

Note: We recommend that the seat is unoccupied.

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Front Seats

Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again releases it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

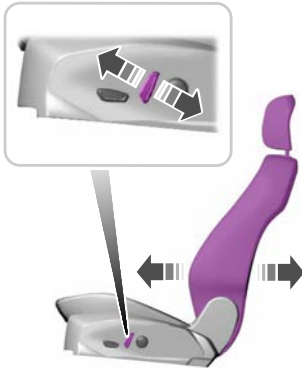
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

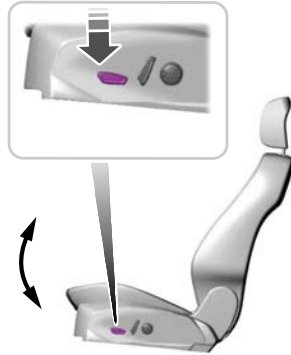


Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

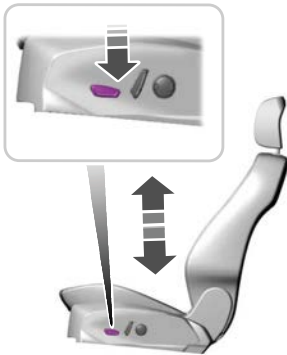


Tilting the Seat Cushion



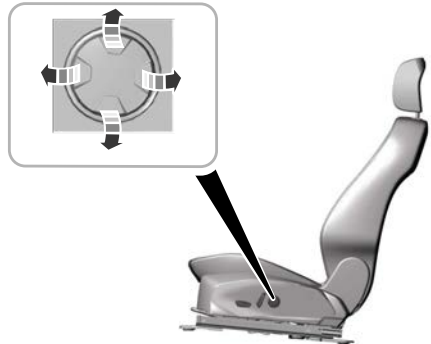
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT

Adjusting the Seat Height



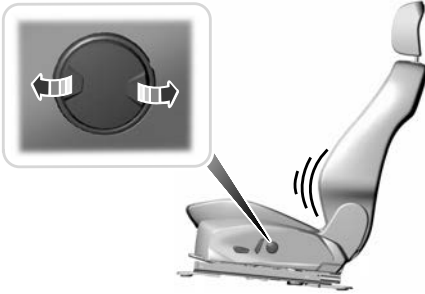
ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT

4-Way Lumbar Support

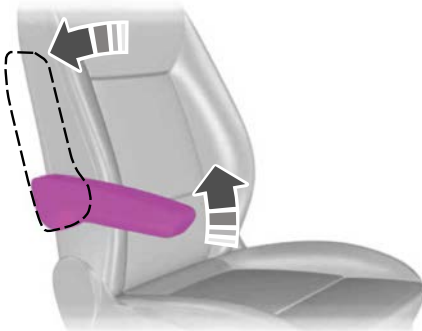


Front Seats

2-Way Lumbar Support



FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST



HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

⚠️ WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠️ WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠️ WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Front Seats



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *Only the outboard seat on a dual passenger seat is heated.*

Note: *Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Automatic Heated Seats

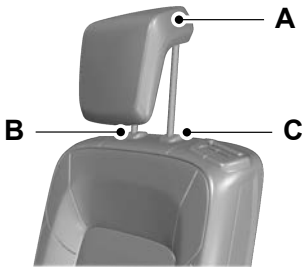
When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS - BUS

Rear Seat Head Restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - BUS



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT - BUS

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - BUS

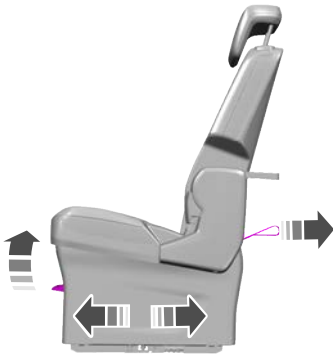
1. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD - BUS



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Rear Seats

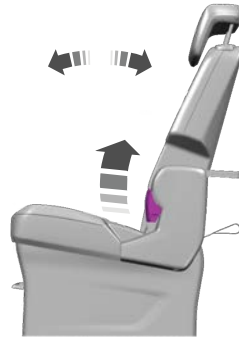


Lift the front handle to move the seat backward and forward when the seat is occupied.

If the seat is unoccupied pull the rear strap to move the seat backward and forward.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST - M1 BUS

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



Lift the recline lever to adjust the seat backrest.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - BUS

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Do not sit in a seat facing a folded seat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

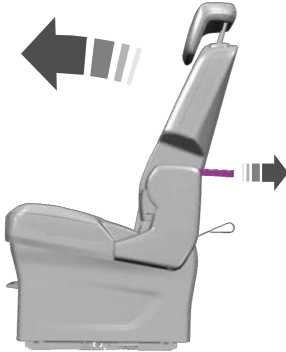


Move the second row seats backward and the third row seats forward until the stopper.

Note: Do not force the rear seats over the stopper in any direction.

Rear Seats

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



When the seat is unoccupied pull the strap from behind to fold the seat backrest.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.

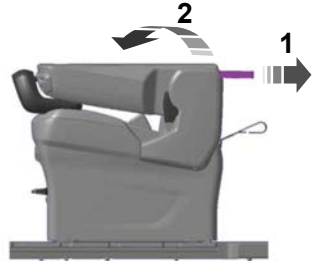
REMOVING THE SEATS - BUS

WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.

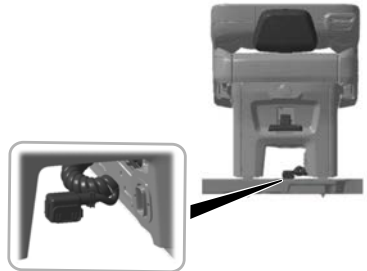
WARNING: Seats can weigh up to 60 kg (132 lb). Do not attempt to lift or carry any seat on your own.

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Note: Removing the seats is only possible, when the backrest is folded.

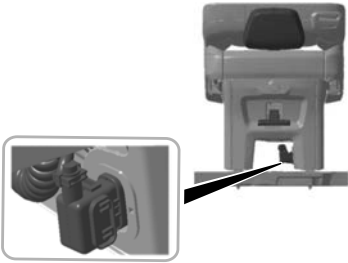


1. Pull the recliner release strap to fold the seat backrest.

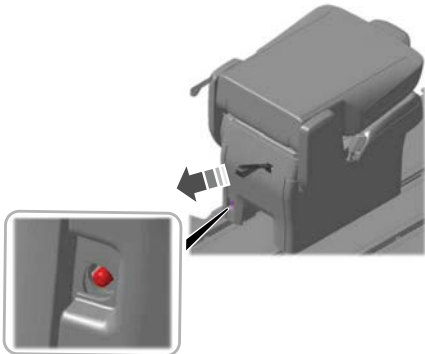


2. Disconnect the kettle cable from the floor connector.

Rear Seats



3. Fix the kettle cable to the to seat dummy plug.



4. Pull the track release strap and check for the indicator to confirm seat unmount.
5. Remove the seat from the vehicle.

Note: To remove seats from your vehicle, use lifting points on the backrest and biteline between cushion and backrest.

ROTATING THE SECOND ROW SEATS - BUS

WARNING: Do not sit in a rearward facing second row seat if any of the third row seats have been removed and the vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

The second row seats are reversible. To rotate the seats remove and reinstall each seat in the required direction. See **Removing the Seats** (page 155). See **Installing the Seats** (page 156).

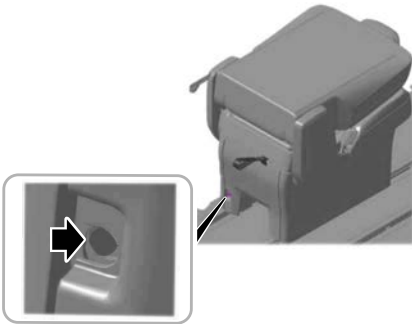
INSTALLING THE SEATS - BUS

WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.

WARNING: Make sure that you securely fasten the seat catches when installing. Make sure that the latches are correctly engaged by checking the red latch indicators.

Note: Make sure you install the seat to the same location you removed it from.

Rear Seats



After you installed the seat, make sure that the red indicator is not visible.

Note: Make sure you connect the kettle cable to the floor connector.

Note: When you install a seat, check that all seats are displayed correctly in the instrument cluster display.

Note: If you install new seats, or seats from another identical vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 41).

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

The rear seat heat control switch is on the front lower part of the seat.



Press the heated seat symbol to turn the heated seats on and off.

The heated seats turn off when you switch off the vehicle.

Rear Seats

REAR SEATS VIDEOS

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

[Tourneo Custom Moving the Seat Backward and Forward Video Link](#)

Adjusting the Seat Backrest

[Tourneo Custom Adjusting the Seat Backrest Video Link](#)

Folding the Seat Backrest and Removing the Seats

[Tourneo Custom Folding the Seat Backrest and Removing the Seats Video Link](#)

Rotating the Second Row Seats

[Tourneo Custom Rotating the Second Row Seats Video Link](#)

Installing the Seats

[Tourneo Custom Installing the Seats Video Link](#)

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

Note: The default setting is **Alert Only**.

Note: If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

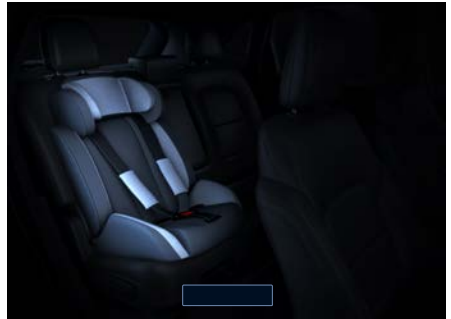
Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message

Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that require up to the rating on the outlet cover.

Note: *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: *This feature has a maximum output of 400 watts when the vehicle is in park (P).*

Note: *While in drive (D), the maximum outlet output is 300 watts.*

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

Do not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be located on either the driver's or the passenger's seat base.



POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power outlet is on.
Off	The power outlet is off.
Flashing	The power outlet is in fault mode.

Note: *Due to different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged in.*

Note: *The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the Watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Open the driver door to reset the power outlet. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not plug your device back in if it exceeds the maximum outlet output.*

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the cargo area.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.

Wireless Accessory Charger



CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

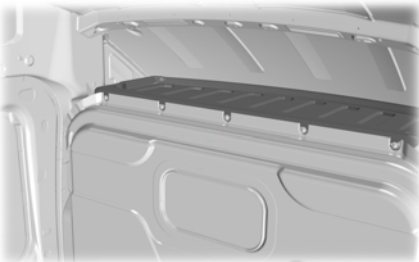
Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE



WARNING: Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E169073

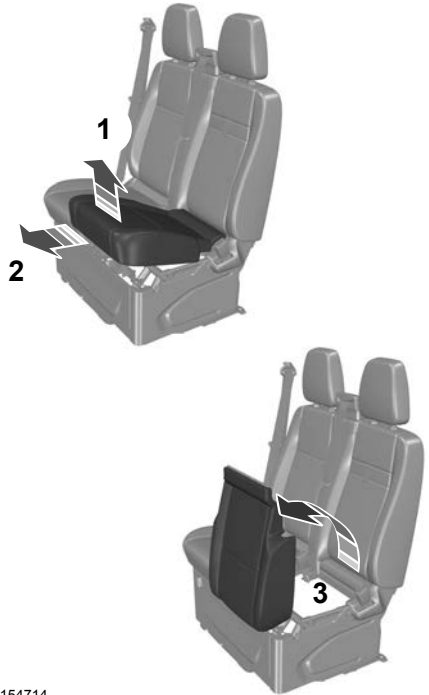
OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 20 kg (44 lb).

UNDER SEAT STORAGE

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT - VEHICLES WITH: PASSENGER DOUBLE SEAT

The under seat storage compartment is under the front passenger seat.



E154714

1. Lift the front of the passenger seat cushion.
2. Pull the seat cushion forward.
3. Tilt the seat cushion forward.

Note: *Both the inboard and outboard seats have a storage compartment.*

Storage

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT - VEHICLES WITH: REAR SEATS

The under seat storage drawers are under the second row center seat and the third row left-hand seat.

1. To open, lift the drawer and pull it out.
2. To close, slide the drawer in and push it down.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.



WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.*

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

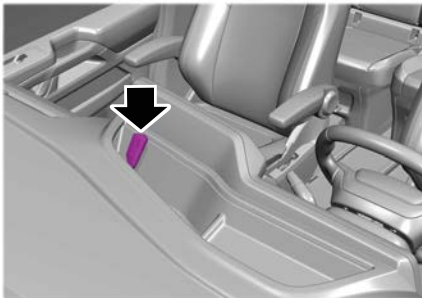
OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **Reset** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS



Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
 1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 175).

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Fuel and Refueling

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: *We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.*

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment. If your vehicle has a tire sealant and inflator kit, the funnel is in the tire sealant and inflator kit bag. If your vehicle has a jack and tool kit, the funnel is next to the jack and tools. See **Changing a Flat Tire** (page 394).

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket fuel funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 185).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

Fuel and Refueling

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

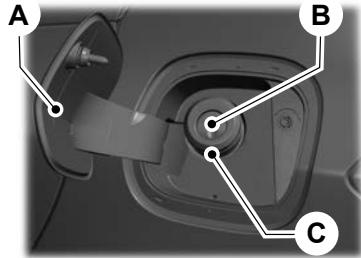
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Fuel and Refueling

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

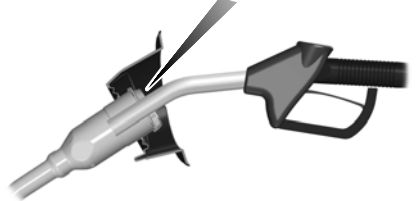
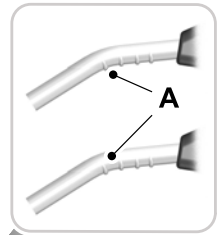
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

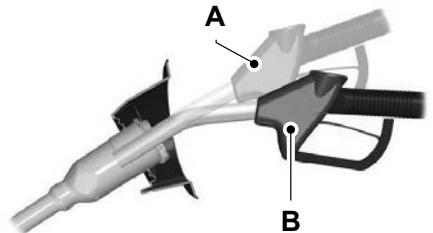


1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully open the fuel filler door.

3. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

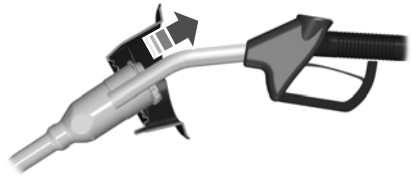
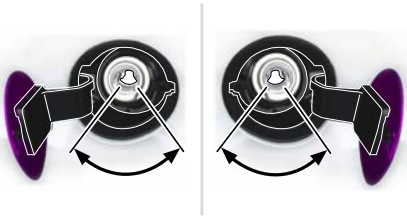


4. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



5. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling



6. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

7. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

8. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	55 L (12.1 gal)
Vehicles with larger fuel tank.	70 L (15.4 gal)

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test

procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
12.4–8.4 (23–34)	9.8–6.3 (29–45)	9.6–5.7 (29–50)	13.3–7.2 (21–39)	11.3–6.8 (25–42)	178–296

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

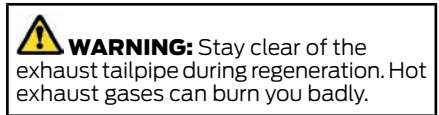
DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

Note: *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS



You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display.

Note: *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m (10–15 ft) away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h (25 mph), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start your vehicle and when the engine has reached normal operating temperature, press the information display control button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 109).

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message appears in the information display to initiate filter cleaning. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 194). Follow the prompts to initiate manual regeneration. If you are unsure about the messages, contact an authorized dealer. The display confirms when the operation has started and when it has finished.



When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the malfunction indicator lamp

illuminates and a message appears in the information display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases and the cooling fan speed increases. Due to a change in engine speed and cooling fan speed, you may notice a change in sound.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

Diesel Particulate Filter

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp



illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

The selective catalytic reduction system helps reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust system.

HOW DOES THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM WORK

The selective catalytic reduction system injects diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system to enable correct selective catalytic reduction system function.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

Note: *The use and refilling of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) is mandatory for your vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not add fuel or any additives to the AdBlue tank. This will cause damage not covered by vehicle warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not reuse an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

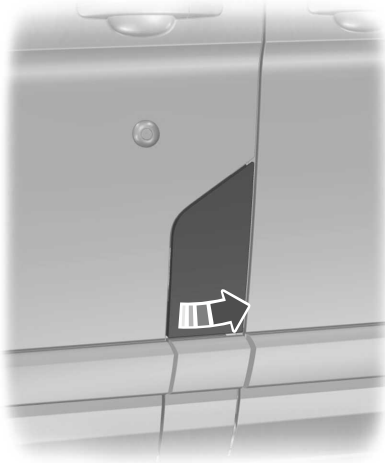
Note: *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

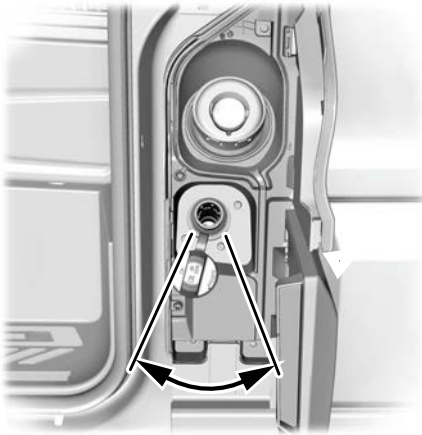
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.
3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
- Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL

- Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
- Select **Settings**.
- Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
- Select **AdBlue® level**.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

- Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
- Select **Settings**.
- Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
- Select **AdBlue® Info**.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	20 L (4.4 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level

is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

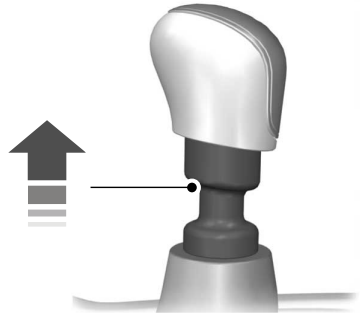
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

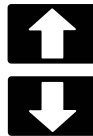
Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 211).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Manual Transmission

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 215).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 208).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

DRIVE (D)

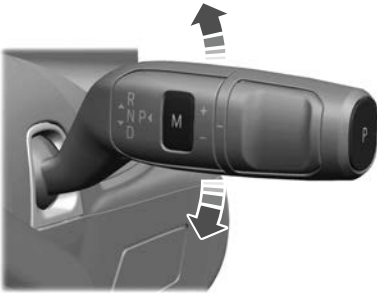
In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

MANUAL (M)

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 206).

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 316).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The selector is on the steering column.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).

6. Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS



The instrument cluster displays the current position.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



Automatic Transmission

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

Note: *Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.*

Note: *If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.*

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Shift into neutral (N) again.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

Note: *You must complete this procedure within 20 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.*

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you exit the driver seat before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

SHIFTING USING THE BUTTONS ON THE COLUMN SHIFTER

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 316).



Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to switch the feature on.

- Rotate the control away from you (+) to upshift.
- Rotate the control toward you (-) to downshift.
- Press the manual (M) button again or shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you stay in your vehicle with power on.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 208).

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: An instructional message appears.

5. Shift into neutral (N) again.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Automatic Transmission

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the information display may flash in this mode.*

EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt and exit the driver seat.

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park could not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt buckle switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Transmission not in park message appears after you shift out of park (P).

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Transmission Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select N again	Displays when your vehicle is trying to enter Temporary Neutral Mode.
30min Neutral Mode enabled Not a tow mode	Displays when your vehicle successfully enters Temporary Neutral Mode.

All-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if something (mechanical interference or de-synchronization) prevents all-wheel drive operation.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system has resumed normal function due to the system cooling or mechanical synchronization.
AWD off	The all-wheel drive system may turn off to protect itself if you are using a temporary spare tire or if another vehicle system prevents all-wheel drive operation.
AWD malfunction Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country where your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. The hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 347).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

Brakes



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 402).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 408).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

There is an electrical motor sound after I press the brake pedal or activate the electric parking brake. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are from the brake system operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 367).*

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

Pull the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

Pull the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when the transmission selector is in park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 204).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Electric Parking Brake

Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Fasten the driver seatbelt.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 325).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



The red warning lamp illuminates when the electronic parking brake is applied or for a few seconds on start up.

If it remains illuminated or flashes when the electronic parking brake is not applied, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse brake assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 218).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- If your vehicle has the cross traffic alert system, make sure it is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 289).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 226).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 224).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse brake assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, have the system checked.

- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 289). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 227). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 229).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse brake assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse brake assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu in the SYNC display screen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, and fasten your seatbelt.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu in the SYNC display screen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

Auto Hold

3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See*

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake (page 215).

Note: *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

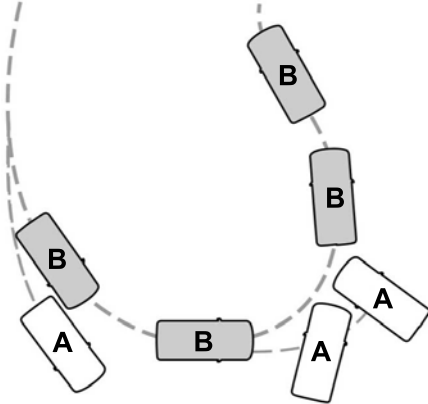
TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



A Without stability control.

B With stability control.

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: *Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 110 cm (43 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and the audible warning mutes.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 110 cm (43 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and audible warning mutes.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



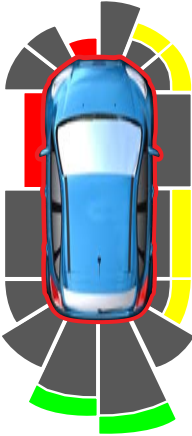
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Message	Details
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

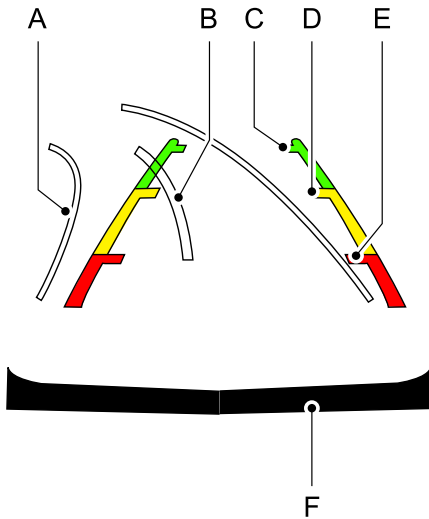


Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is located above the license plate on the liftgate or on the rear cargo door.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

Rear View Camera

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

3. Press **Rear View Camera**.
4. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

180 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.*

Note: *Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.*

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: *Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.*

360 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is below the central high mounted stop lamp or on the rear cargo door. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

360 Degree Camera

Front View Camera

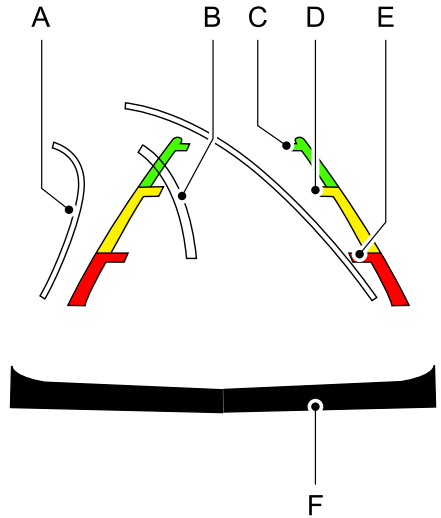
The front view camera is in the front grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the exterior mirror. It provides a video image of the area on both sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

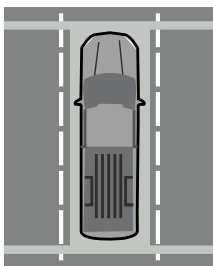
Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

360 Degree Camera

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

Note: *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: *The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Invisible van provides the rear facing view and side views as if driver can see through the walls of the van.



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.



Zooms in on the image.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

360 Degree Camera

Note: *The rear normal view and hitch view are available when your vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).*

Active Park Assist

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.


Note: *Active park assist also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).*

Brake System Intervention


When active park assist is controlling the steering, it could under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST


1.  Press the parking button.

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
 3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
- Note:** *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*
4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Active Park Assist

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.


5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
7.  Press and hold the parking button.
8. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to park.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.


Note: When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.

Note: When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1.  Press the parking aid button.

Note: The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.


5. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
7. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

8. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1.  Press the parking button.

Note: Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.
4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.


Active Park Assist

Note: If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.

5. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.

6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).

8.  Press and hold the parking button.

9. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

Note: Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.


Note: Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.

Note: When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.


Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

Note: When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1.  Press the parking aid button.

Note: Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.
4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
5. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

6. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
8. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

9. Follow the instructions on the information display.




Note: When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

Note: Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

Note: When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.

Active Park Assist

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

-  Press the parking button.
-  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
- Select parallel park exit.
- Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Release the parking brake.
- Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
-  Press and hold the parking button.
- Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to move.


Note: After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.


- Take control of your vehicle.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

-  Press the parking aid button.

-  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
- Select parallel park exit.
- Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.
- Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
- Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

Note: After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Active Park malfunction	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Active Park Assist

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.5 m (1.6 yd) or less than 0.5 m (0.5 yd) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (21.7 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 19 km/h (11.8 mph) for perpendicular parking.
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.
- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-


Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Cruise Control


CANCELING THE SET SPEED

 Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.


Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

 Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

 Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

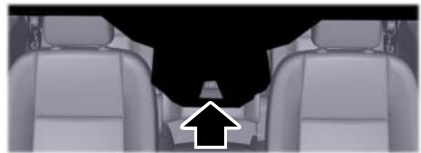
WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

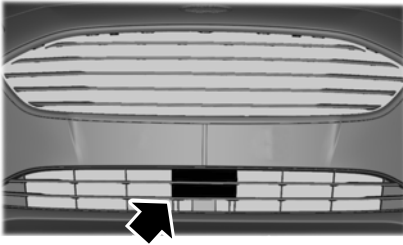
WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Adaptive Cruise Control



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

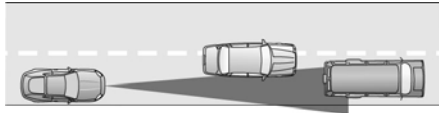
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 262).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

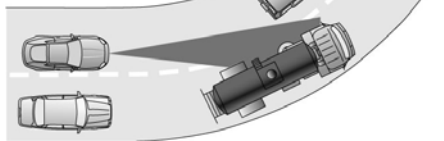
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 245).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET- Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



E249552

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: *The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 247).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 257).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.

- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

Note: *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system will remain in standby until valid line markings are available.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 248).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

Adaptive Cruise Control

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 256).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Using the adaptive cruise control and lateral support buttons, make sure both systems are active. Lane centering activates.



To switch off lane centering, press the adaptive cruise control button or the lateral support button. When using the lateral support button confirm with ok the question prompt display in the instrument cluster when the system is active or in standby mode.

Note: *Lane centering turns off through each ignition cycle.*

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 256).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Press **Lane Centering Assist**.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 257).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system immediately activates and releases the breaks and slows the vehicle while maintaining steering assistance when lane markings are available. When no lane markings are available, the vehicle comes to a stop.

If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must provide steering input to the wheel and press the accelerator pedal to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.*

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*


PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST


HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 259).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 247).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 264). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on.
6. Press **Tolerance**.
7. Use **+** and **-** to set the tolerance.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Left intersection.



Right intersection.



Left roundabout.



Right roundabout.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Norm. cruise act. Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

DRIVE MODES

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: If you switch off your vehicle in a mode other than Normal, the system prompts you to return to this previous mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to Normal mode.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

SPORT



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.

TOW/HAUL



Vehicle settings suited for towing or hauling.

TRAIL - AWD



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Note: Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.

Drive Mode Control

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 412).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Speed Limiter


INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.




Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*


Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

Intelligent Speed Limiter


CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears green.


INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limiter**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM


The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.


Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*


LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

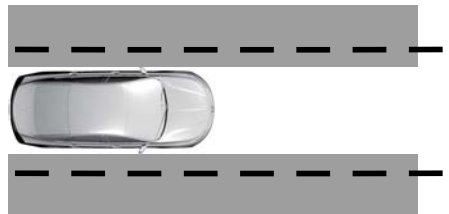
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

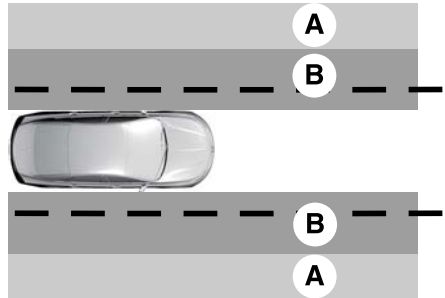
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



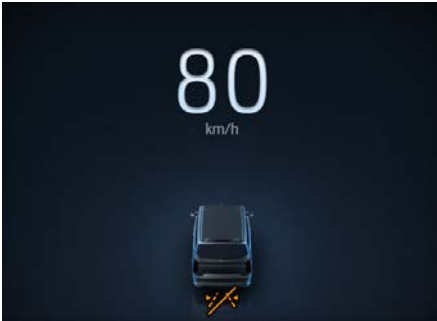
When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (35 mph), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (35 mph), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, an amber indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Lane Keeping System

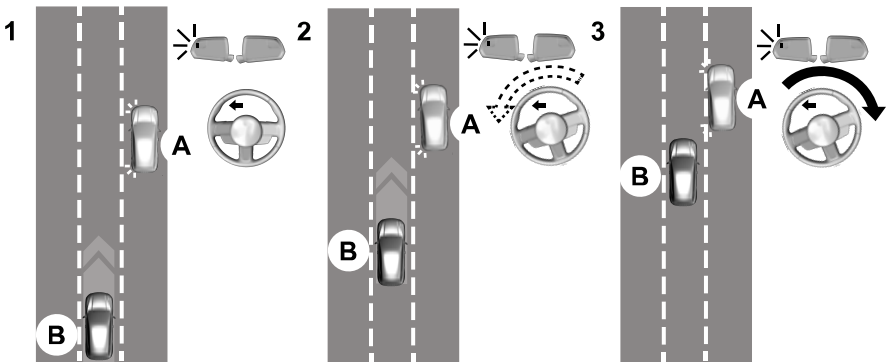
Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 280).

Lane Keeping System

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 282).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 282).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 282).

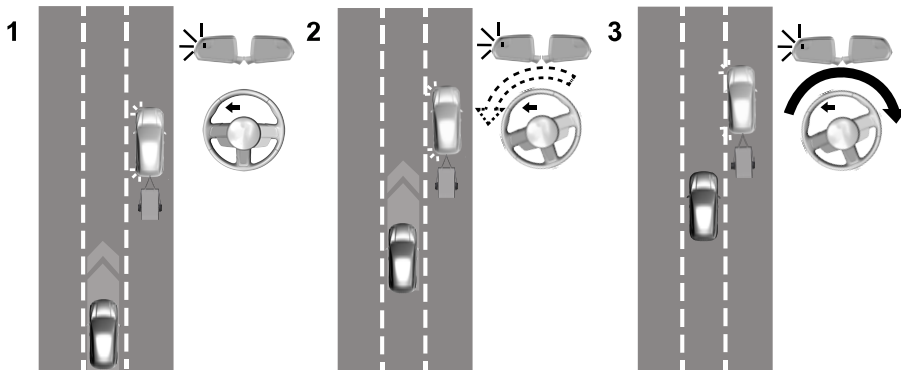
Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 280).

Lane Keeping System

Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Information Messages

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 282).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

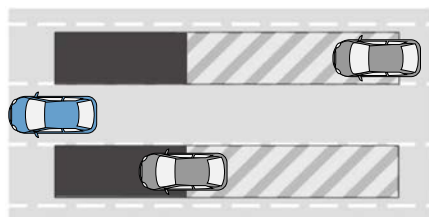
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

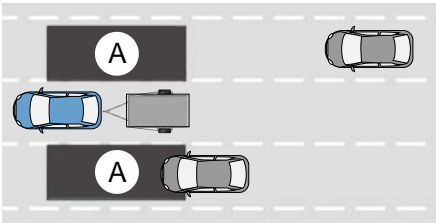
Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

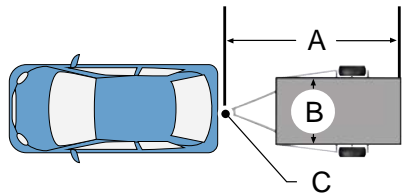
Note: The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

Blind Spot Information System

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

Note: *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

Blind Spot Information System

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

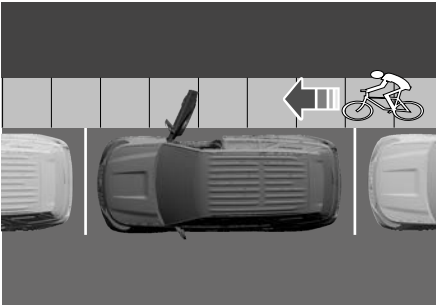
Exit Warning

WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects approaching your open door.

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door.



Note: The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.

WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

Note: Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.

Note: The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

Exit Warning Alert

Note: Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 283).

Exit Warning

In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING - TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING - INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning System malfunction	Displays if the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

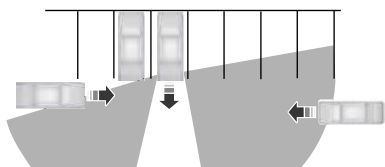
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

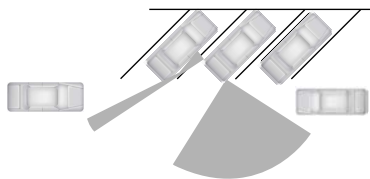
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h (4 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.

Cross Traffic Alert

- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.*

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: *If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

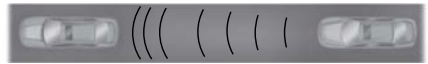
Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist


HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL


The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph).


HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL


The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).


PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

 **WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

Pre-Collision Assist

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

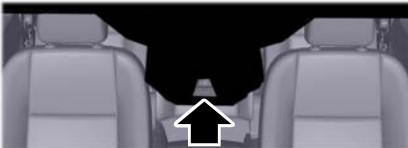
PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



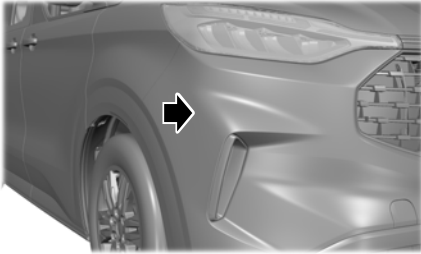
The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.



Pre-Collision Assist



The radar sensors are behind the front grille below the license plate and behind the front bumper on the left and right sides.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Pre-Collision Assist

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 292).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: *No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 292).*

Pre-Collision Assist

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera

is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.*

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

Traffic Sign Recognition



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

LIM Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: *The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION CHIME FOR SPEED LIMIT CHANGE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Traffic Sign Recognition

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.*

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

ROOF RACK - VEHICLES WITHOUT INTEGRATED ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Roof Load

Variant	Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) kg (lb)
Low Roof	170 (375)
Medium Roof	120 (265)

ROOF RACK - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRATED ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



WARNING: The crossbars are heavy. To help avoid personal injury take care when lowering the crossbars.



WARNING: When folding the crossbars down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



WARNING: Do not tether loads near the release lever.



E171581

You must place loads directly on the raised crossbars.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

Note: *If you raise the crossbars, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Make sure the crossbars are in the folded position before entering a car wash.*

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

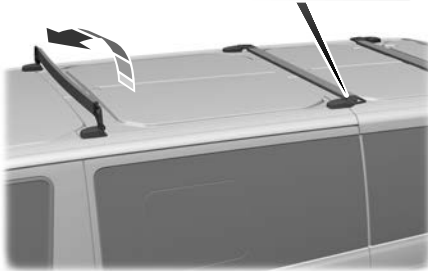
Load Carrying

ADJUSTING A ROOF RACK CROSSBAR



1. Pull the release lever.
2. Raise or lower the crossbars until they lock into place.

Note: Make sure the crossbars are in the folded position before entering a car wash.



E167062

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Roof Load

Using two adjacent crossbars kg (lb)	Using all three crossbars kg (lb)
75 (165)	155 (342)

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

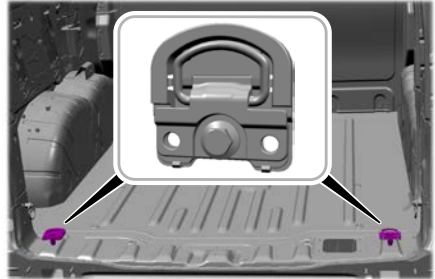
WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - BUS



Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - VAN



Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

Body style	Maximum Load Value
Bus	3,500 N (785 lb)
Van	5,000 N (1,125 lb)

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use your foot or any tools to deploy or retract the tow ball arm.

Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is deploying or retracting to the released position.

Do not use the tow ball arm if no tones sound when deploying the tow ball arm or when you lock it into position. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you deploy the tow ball arm, check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked. It must not move if jerked or when you attach a trailer.
- The LED is not flashing and no warning tones sound.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TOW BALL LIMITATIONS

The tow ball arm does not retract or deploy if any of the following occur:

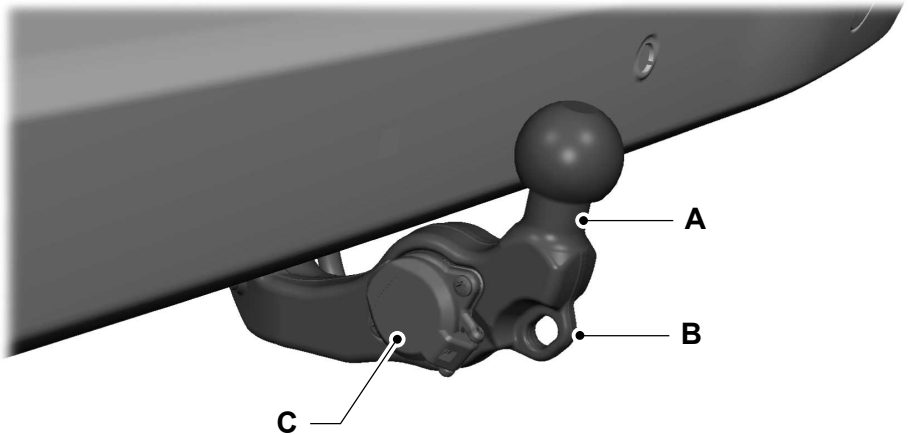
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate is closed.

TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



- A Tow ball arm in tow position.
- B Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- C Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

Connecting a Trailer

DEPLOYING THE TOW BALL ARM



1. Press the button. It is on the right-hand side in the cargo area.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.

2. Press the button again within four seconds to deploy the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the tow position.

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm deploys and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without deploying the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the deploy process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed or the power supply is lost, the system must be reset. To reset the system fully repeat the process.

RETRACTING THE TOW BALL ARM

1. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



2. Press the button. It is on the right-hand side in the cargo area.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.

3. Press the button again within four seconds to retract the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the stowed position.

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm retracts and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without retracting the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Trailer Connection Checklist

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

Connecting a Trailer

2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Connection checklist**.

Electronic Park Hold



Applies the electronic parking brake when you shift to park (P).

The electronic park hold button illuminates when activated.

The feature prevents your vehicle from moving in any direction when you are aligned with your trailer coupler and shift to park (P).

Note: *The feature is active for the current key cycle.*

You can also press a zoom button when using the camera views to switch the feature on.

Trailer Connection Alarm

The alarm is set when the following occur:

- Your vehicle detects the trailer.
- Your vehicle is locked.
- The alarm is armed.

When the trailer is disconnected in this state, the vehicle alarm sounds and an alert is sent to your FordPass app.

Note: *For reliable trailer detection, the trailer's lamps must be SAE certified for each intended purpose.*

Note: *If the trailer is not compatible with the feature, the turn signals flash twice.*

TRAILER LIGHTING CHECK



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer light check feature allows one person to confirm that all taillights are functioning.

Perform a trailer light illumination sequence to confirm that all lights are functioning using the SYNC screen in the vehicle.

Performing the Trailer Light Check using the SYNC screen in vehicle

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Trailer Light Check**.
4. Press **Start**.
5. Follow the instructions until the lights sequence completes.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.*

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Wiring malfunction on trailer	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 320).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 410).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 317).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.

Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm (6 in) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
2.0L EcoBlue.	100–112 (220–247)

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

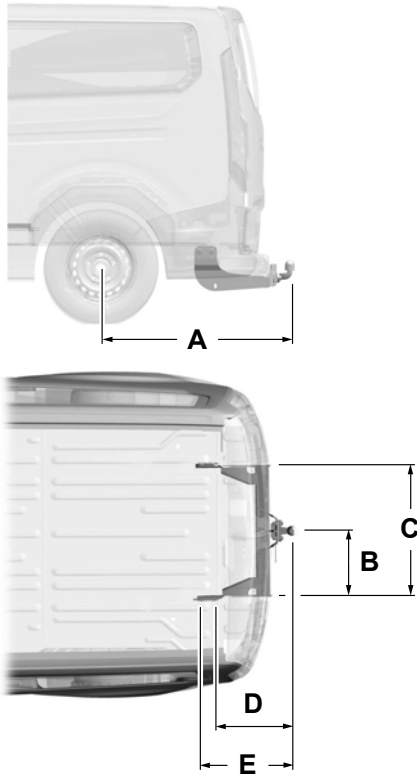
TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



E148831

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Medium or Long Wheelbase

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,344–1,381 (52.9–54.4)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	417 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	839 (33.0)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	619–666 (24.4–26.2)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	704–741 (27.7–29.2)

Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	2,105 (82.9)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	417 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	839 (33.0)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	629–666 (24.8–26.2)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	704–741 (27.7–29.2)

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer sway Reduce speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 211).

BREAKING-IN

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

Driving Hints

DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 323).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 210).

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Driving Hints

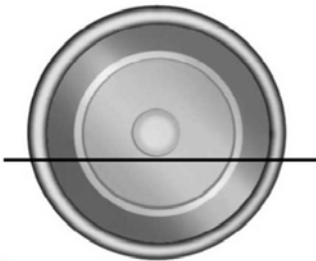
DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER

WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

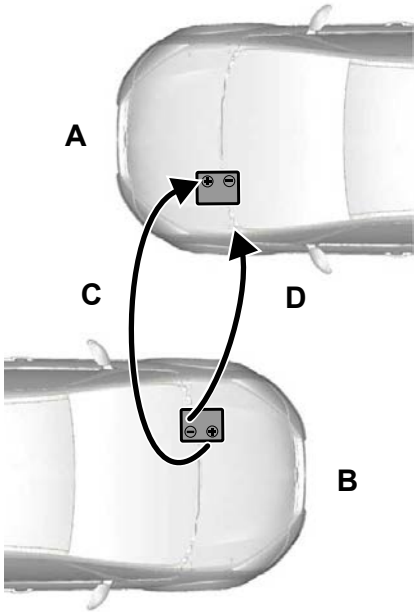


WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

Connecting the Jumper Cables



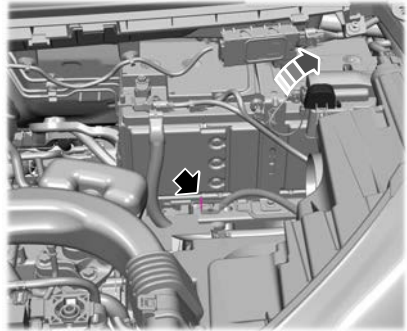
- A Vehicle with the discharged battery.
- B Vehicle with the booster battery.
- C Positive jumper cable.
- D Negative jumper cable.

1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.
2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 347).



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- When the engine starts, run the engines for three minutes before you disconnect the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: *Do not switch the headlamps on before you disconnect the jumper cables. The peak voltage could cause the bulbs to fail.*

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

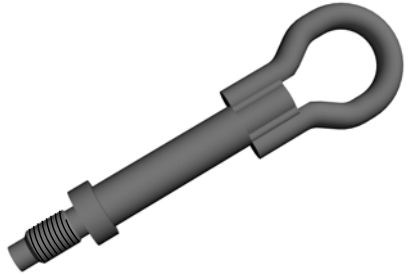
RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



E146426

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye could be found:

- In the left-hand d-pillar, inside the tire repair kit box.
- In the left-hand d-pillar, mounted on the vehicle jack.

Note: *You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.*

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

Crash and Breakdown Information



E146426

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

Note: *It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



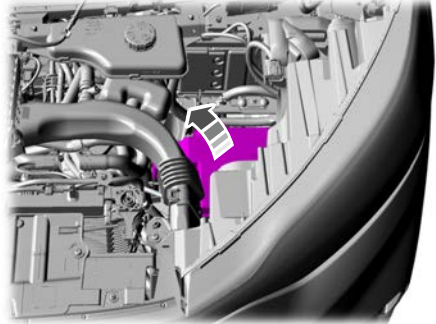
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

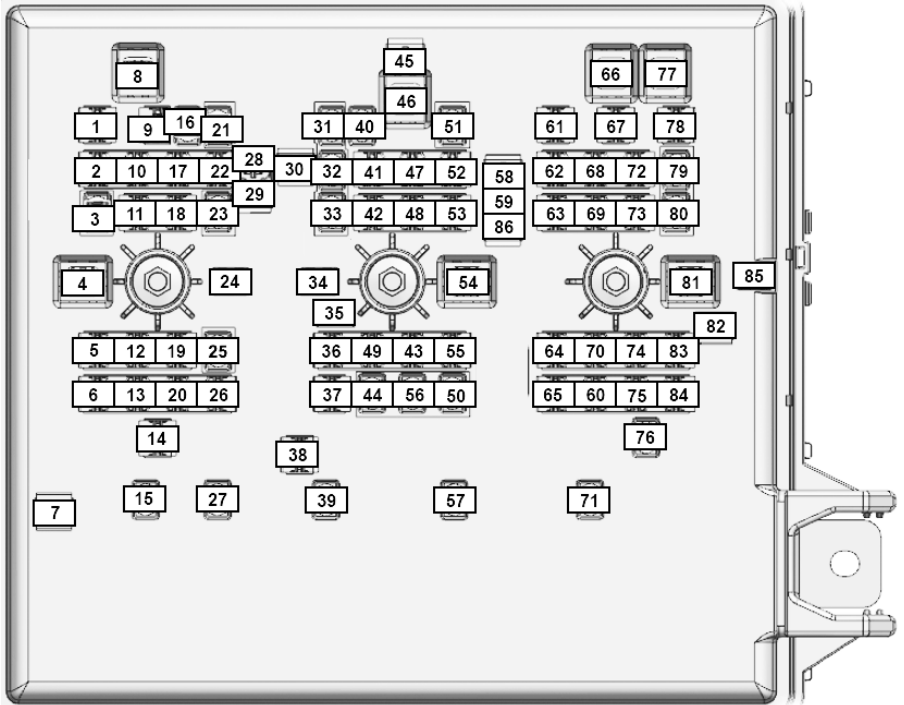
UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	15 A	Rear washer motor.
2	15 A	Left-hand side rear heated seat.
3	40 A	Left-hand side front window defrost.
4	40 A	Auxiliary blower.
5	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
6	-	Not used.
7	15 A	Power folding mirrors.
8	40 A	Blower motor.
9	5 A	Rain sensor.
10	15 A	Right-hand side rear heated seat.
11	5 A	Tachograph.
12	5 A	USB smart charger 3.
13	-	Not used.
14	-	Not used.
15	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 3.
16	30 A	Upfitter 1.
17	7.5 A	Tachograph.
18	-	Not used.
19	5 A	USB smart charger 1.
20	-	Not used.
21	20 A	Rear wiper.
22	10 A	Power steering module.
23	20 A	Right-hand heated backlight.
24	60 A	ABS valve/Electric brake booster valve.
25	20 A	Power point 1 power outlet/Cigar lighter.
26	5 A	USB smart charger 2.
27	40 A	Right-hand front window defrost.
28	5 A	Interior power distribution box run/start relay coil.
29	10 A	Heated mirror.
30	5 A	All-wheel drive control module.
31	25 A	Front wiper motor.
32	15 A	Transaxle transmission oil pump.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
33	30 A	Left-hand heated backlight/Lift gate.
34	60 A	ABS control module/Electric brake booster pump.
35	5 A	USB smart charger 6.
36	5 A	USB smart charger 5.
37	5 A	USB smart charger 4.
38	10 A	Anti-theft horn/Battery upbacked sound alarm.
39	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 2.
40	30 A	Upfitter 4.
41	10 A	Left-hand/Right-hand headlamp leveling motors.
42	10 A	Generator/Battery charger control module.
43	5 A	Transmission control module/Fuel door motor.
44	20 A	Power point 2. rear outlet
45	-	Not used.
46	-	Not used.
47	10 A	ABS control module.
48	15 A	Heated steering wheel/Mirror/Seering control module.
49	-	Not used.
50	40 A	Fuel filter heater.
51	40 A	Electronic limited slip differential module.
52	10 A	Inverter slip control module/Hybrid powertrain control module/Transaxle.
53	10 A	Body security module/Cruise control module/Heads-up display/Camera park assist.
54	60 A	DC/AC 400W inverter.
55	20 A	Traffic horn.
56	30 A	Fuel pump/Fuel pump control module.
57	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 1.

Fuses

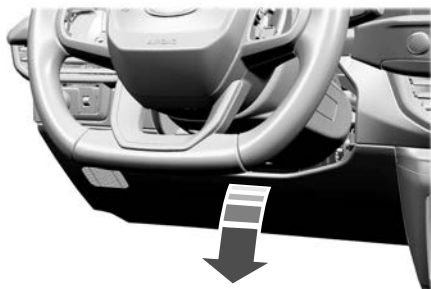
Item	Rating	Protected Component
58	-	Not used.
59	-	Not used.
60	-	Not used.
61	15 A	Reductant pressure line.
62	10 A	Powertrain control module.
63	5 A	Glow dosing module Transmission/Transaxle.
64	25 A	Power transfer unit pump (All-wheel drive).
65	-	Not used.
66	30 A	Upfitter 2.
67	-	Not used.
68	15 A	Injector pump relay.
69	-	Not used.
70	20 A	Power supply voltage 2.
71	30 A	Starter motor.
72	15 A	Reductant tank heater.
73	5 A	Keep-alive power.
74	15 A	Power supply voltage 1.
75	15 A	Power supply voltage 5.
76	-	Not used.
77	-	Not used.
78	-	Not used.
79	-	Not used.
80	-	Not used.
81	30 A	Upfitter 3.
82	-	Not used.
83	20 A	Power supply voltage 5.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
84	15 A	Power supply voltage 5.
85	-	Not used.
86	-	Not used.

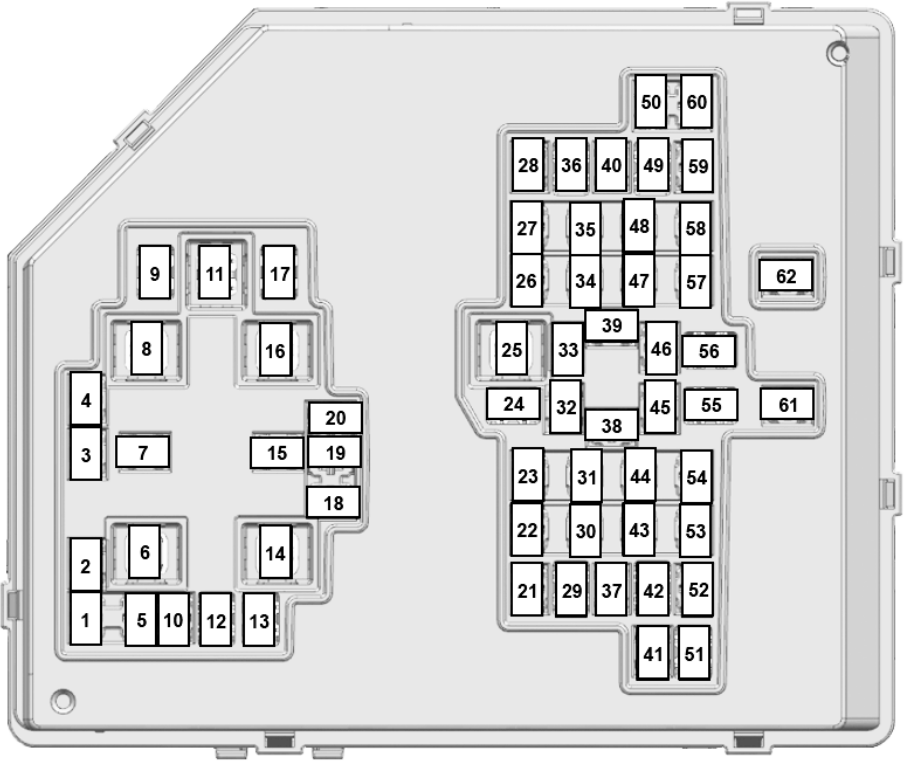
INTERIOR FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Left-hand side power locked door control module. Right-hand side power locked door control module.
2	5 A	Intrusion/Inclination/Heads-up display/Rear climate control module.
3	5 A	Near field control module/Headlamp switch.
4	5 A	Ignition switch.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Keyless start/stop switch.
5	5 A	Cargo/Cabin camera.
6	40 A	Body control module 1.
7	-	Not used.
8	40 A	Body control module 2.
9	-	Not used.
10	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system module.
11	40 A	Trailer tow control module.
12	30 A	Right-hand side power sliding door 2.
13	30 A	Left-hand side power sliding door 2.
14	40 A	Body control module 3.
15	30 A	Moonroof/Sunroof module.
16	40 A	Body control module 4.
17	-	Not used.
18	7.5 A	Power mirror switch/Wireless charger control module.
19	7.5 A	Enhanced central gateway control module.
20	7.5 A	Steering wheel column control module/Cluster.
21	10 A	Switched ground.
22	15 A	Electric steering column lock.
23	-	Not used.
24	40 A	Driver door control module.
25	40 A	Trailer tow battery charge.
26	10 A	Camper interface.
27	10 A	Upfitter interface control module.
28	15 A	Amplifier 1.
29	30 A	Right-hand side power sliding door.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
30	10 A	Wireless buckle monitoring.
31	15 A	Amplifier 2.
32	10 A	Brake on/off switch.
33	5 A	FHH Remote control.

HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To locate the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

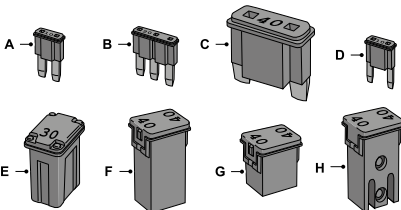
ACCESSING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To access the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To identify the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.

C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

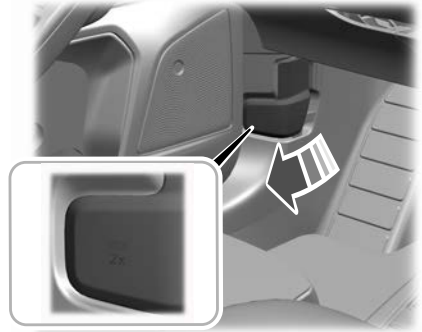
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 402).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - LHD

Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

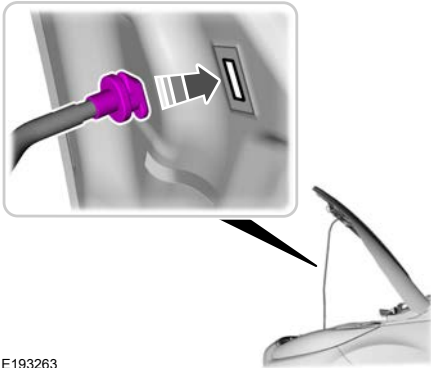
Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*

Maintenance



E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Warning Lamps and Indicators



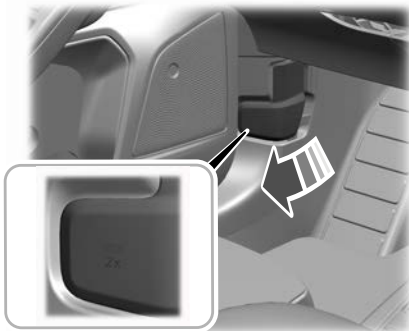
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - RHD

Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: This action releases the hood latch.

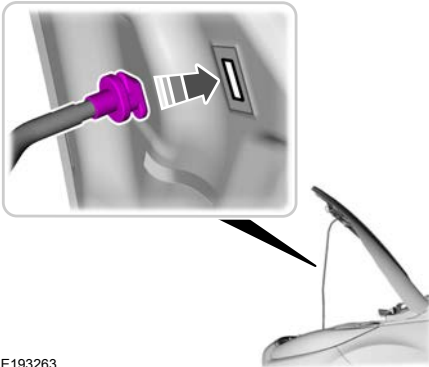
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: This action fully releases the hood.

4. Open the hood.

Note: There is no secondary latch under the hood.

Maintenance



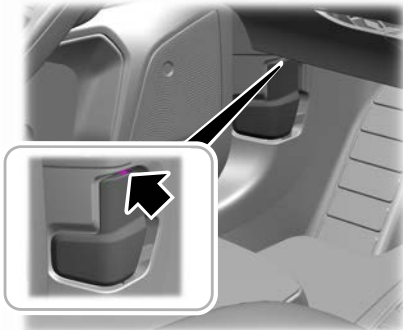
E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

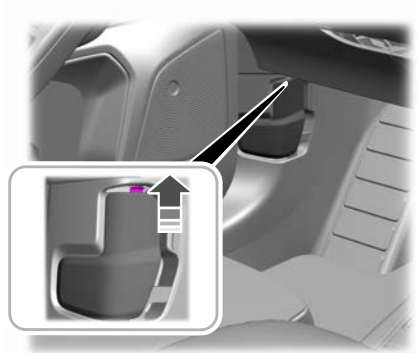
Opening the Hood if the Passenger Door cannot be Opened

1. Unlock the right-hand front door using the key and access the left-hand front footwell. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 55).



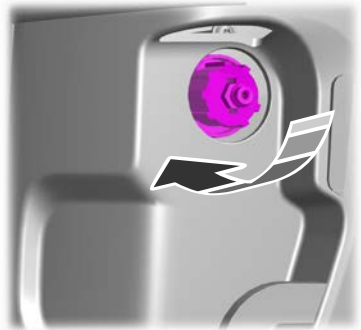
E263801

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown.



E263802

3. Gently pry the hood release lever securing clip upward.



E263803

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a hexagonal socket, and turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Let the hood release mechanism completely retract.

Note: This action releases the hood latch.

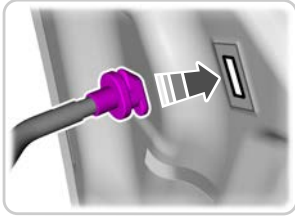
6. Turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance for a second time.

Note: This action fully releases the hood.

Maintenance

7. Open the hood.

Note: There is no secondary latch under the hood.



E193263

8. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

9. Reinstall the hood release lever. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure the hood release lever securing clip is fully engaged.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Warning Lamps and Indicators



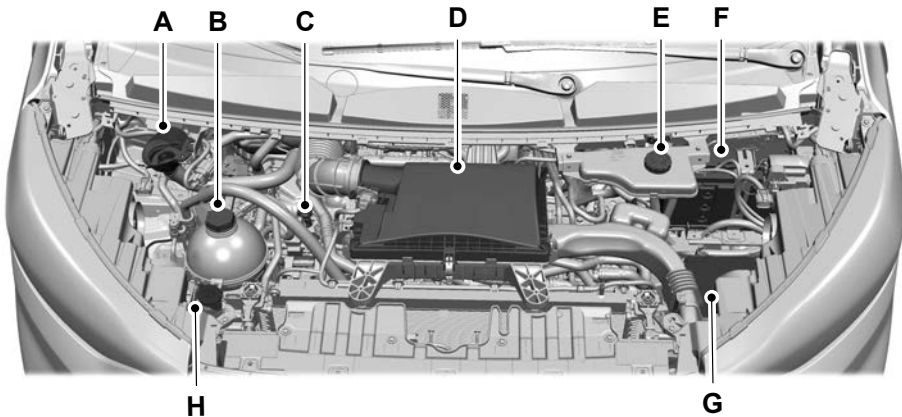
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

Maintenance

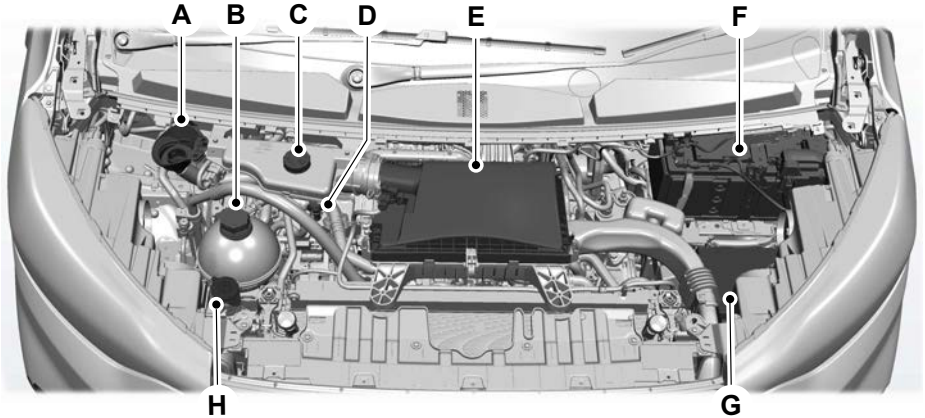
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - LHD



- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 349).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 351).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 349).
- D Air filter assembly.
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 211).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 356).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 334).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 80).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - RHD

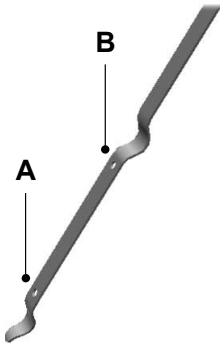


- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 349).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 351).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 211).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 349).
- E Air filter assembly.
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 356).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 334).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 80).

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



A Minimum.

B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

Note: *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

Note: *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 402).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Maintenance

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP



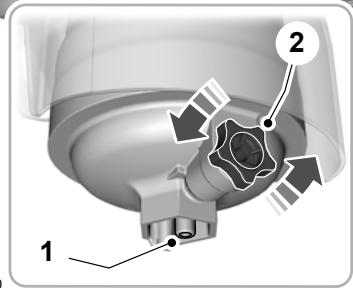
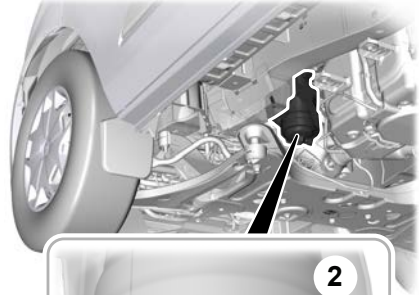
WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning light illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. If you ignore the warning lamp, water may pass through to the system and may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap



E223800

1. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.

Maintenance

2. Turn the drain plug counterclockwise until it stops. Do not use any tools to loosen the drain plug. Drain the fuel filter water trap into an appropriate container. Do not re-use the fuel drained from the fuel filter water trap.
3. Tighten the drain plug, turn it clockwise until it stops and you feel a strong resistance. Do not use any tools to tighten the drain plug.
4. Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds and then switch the ignition off. Repeat this operation six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

ENGINE COOLING FAN



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 191).

COOLANT

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.




WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.


When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.


Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.


Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.


Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.


ADDING COOLANT


 **WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

Maintenance

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 329).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

Maintenance

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 351).
Stop safely now	

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

Maintenance



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

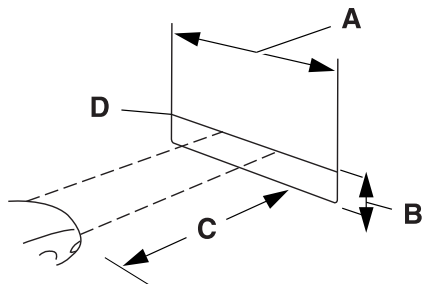
Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 325). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Maintenance

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim

Headlamp Aim Target



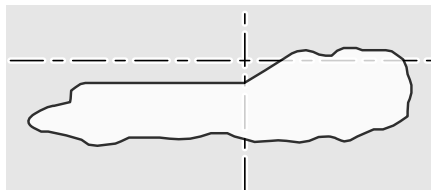
- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

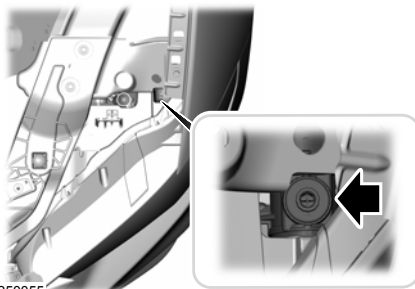
Note: There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m (8 ft) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



E209825

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the left-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm (3 in) below the horizontal reference line.



E250055

7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

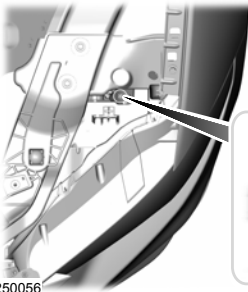
Note: To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.

Maintenance



E250056



- To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

- Locate the adjuster within the extension tube attached to the rear of the headlamp assembly.

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam. ¹	H15	55/15
Headlamp high beam. ²	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamps. ¹	H15	55/15
Daytime running lamps. ²	LED.	-
Front turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Front turn signal lamp. ²	LED.	-
Cornering lamp.	LED.	-
Mirror turn signal lamp. ¹	W16W	16
Mirror turn signal lamp. ²	WY5W	5
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	P21W	21
Rear lamp and rear fog lamp.	P21/4W	21/4
Rear turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Rear turn signal lamp. ²	LED.	-

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Rear lamp.	LED.	-
Stoplamp.	LED.	-
Reversing lamp.	P21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	LED.	-
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

¹ Low series.

² Mid- and High series.

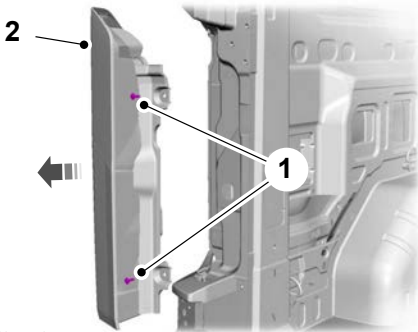
Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

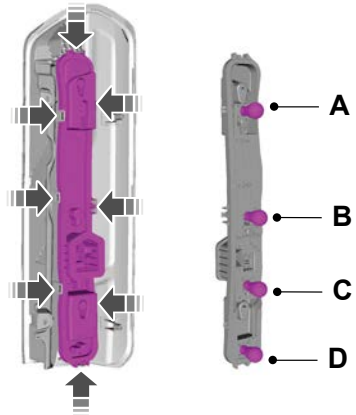


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 361).

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

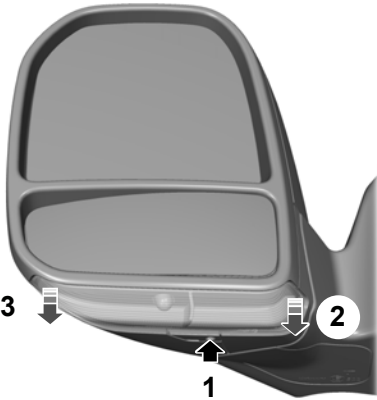
CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

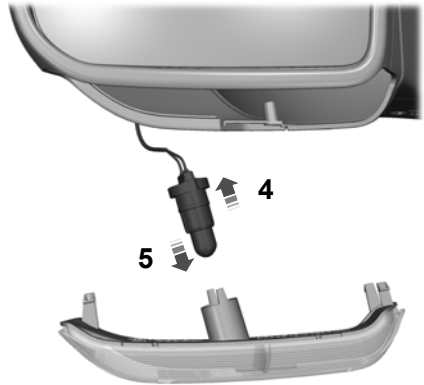
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



1. Remove the screw from the bottom of the mirror.
2. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lift the edge of the lamp.
3. Carefully lift the opposite edge of the lamp to fully remove it.



4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING AN ENTRY LAMP BULB

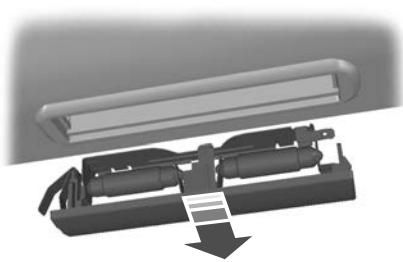
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

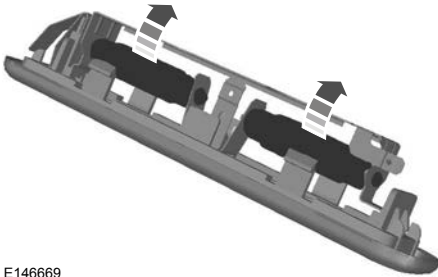
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



E154369



E146669

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

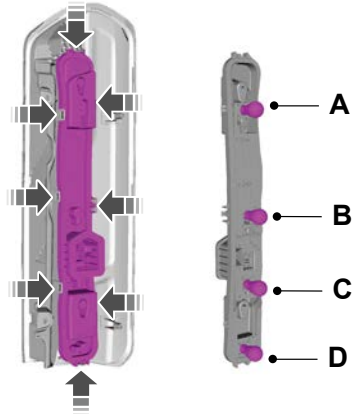


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 361).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

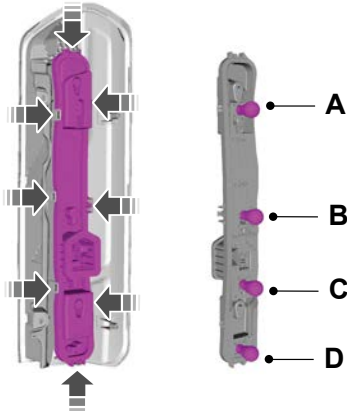


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 361).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.

- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



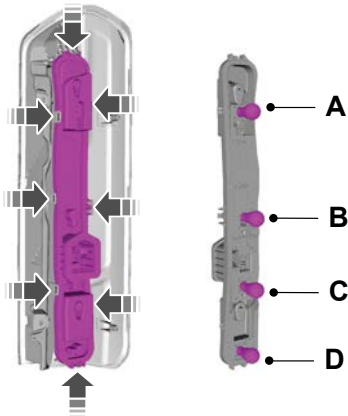
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 361).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

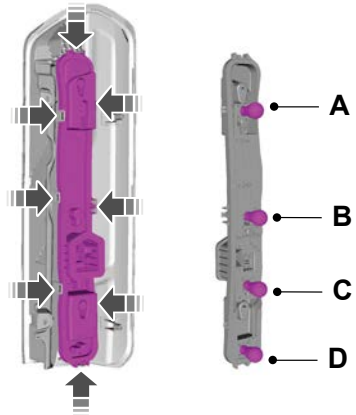


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 361).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Tail lamp and rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

CHANGING A LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB



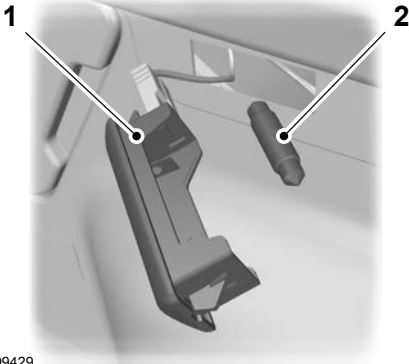
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 359).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E99429

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

FUEL FILTER SERVICE INDICATOR CHECK



If the warning lamp illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alternatively you can drain the fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 350).

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Vehicle Care

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 30 cm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

- Do not use water pressure higher than 10,000 kPa (1,450 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 75°C (167°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
 4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
 5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
 3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage could lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which could cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Hybrid Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally we recommend disconnecting the 12V battery which reduces system loads on the HV battery.

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Storing Your Vehicle

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Wheel and Tire Information

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.


USING WINTER TIRES




We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 378). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 376).

USING SNOW CHAINS

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

 **WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Note: *If your vehicle does not have this tire size, you can purchase alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables.*

Note: *Maintain correct tire pressures.*

Note: *We recommend that you switch the traction control system off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 224).*

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Wheel and Tire Information

Snow Chain Use by Tire Size

Tire Size	Front Wheels	Rear Wheels
215/65 R16C 109/107T	Yes. ¹	X
215/60 R17C 109/107T	Yes. ¹	X
235/50 R19C 111/109T ²	X	X

¹If you use snow chains or cables, we recommended 16"x6.5J steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires are used as snow chains or cables may damage alloy wheels.

²19" wheels and tires are not suitable for use with snow chains or cables. We recommended fitting 6.5Jx16" steel wheels and 215/65R16C tires for use with snow chains or cables.

X Not suitable for use with snow chains.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 376).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BUS



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

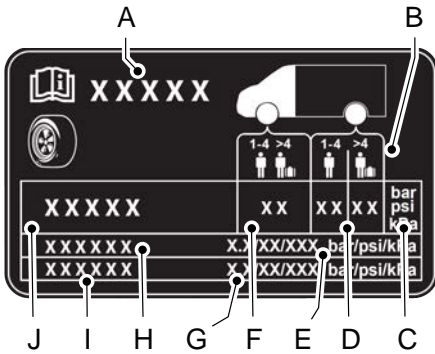
The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

Tire Care



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Variant ¹	Wheel Size	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
			Front	Rear	Rear Only
			bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 S	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 S	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.1 (45)
320 L	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 L	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	4 (58)	3.1 (45)
320 L	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.1 (45)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Tire Care

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Note: All wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - VAN



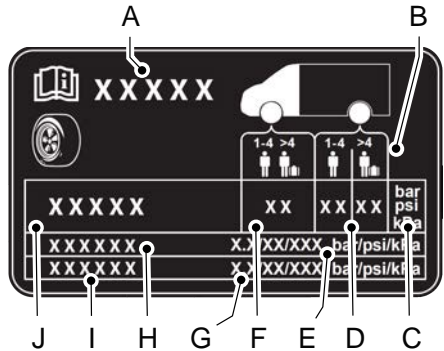
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Wheel Size	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
			Front	Rear	Rear Only
			bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
250 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
260 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 S	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
280 L	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.6 (52)	3.4 (49)	3.4 (49)
300 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 S	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.5 (51)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
300 L	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 L	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.7 (54)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
300 L	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.5 (51)	3.6 (52)	3.6 (52)
320 S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 S	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17 C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 S	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Wheel Size	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
			Front	Rear	Rear Only
			bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320 L	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	4.4 (64)	4.4 (64)
320 L	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.6 (52)	4.1 (59)	4.1 (59)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110M	4.2 (61)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Note: All wheel drive vehicles are only available with temporary spare wheel.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - CAMPER



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer.

Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

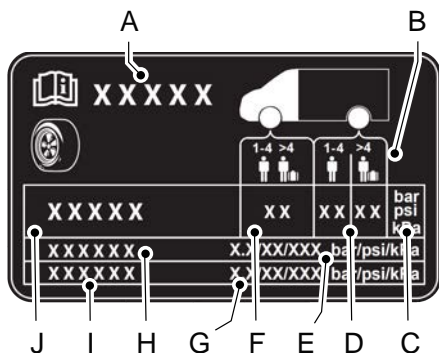
The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

Tire Care



- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Temporary spare wheel tire pressure.
- F Front tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Temporary spare wheel tire size.
- I Spare wheel tire size.
- J Tire size.

Variant ¹	Wheel Size	Tire Size	Full Load		Half Load
			Front	Rear	Rear Only
			bar (psi) 320S	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
320S	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.9 (57)	3.9 (57)
320S	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17C 109/107T	3.8 (55)	3.9 (57)	3.9 (57)
320S	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)
320L	6.5Jx16"	215/65R16C 109/107T	4 (58)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
320 L	6.5Jx17"	215/60R17C 109/107T	4 (58)	3.8 (55)	3.8 (55)
320 L	7.0Jx19"	235/50R19C 111/109T	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)	3.7 (54)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Tire Care

Spare Wheel

Tire Size ¹	bar (psi)
215/65R16C 109/107T	4.4 (64)
T155/70 R17 110T	4.2 (61)

¹To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 410).

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

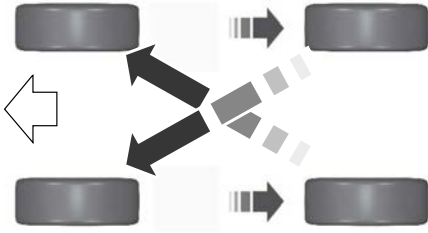
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

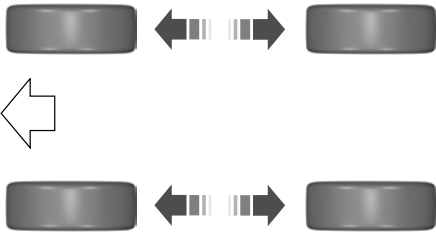
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

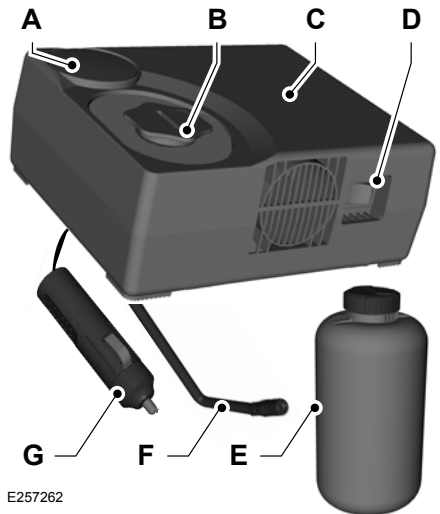
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

WARNING: The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

Note: The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 378). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 376).

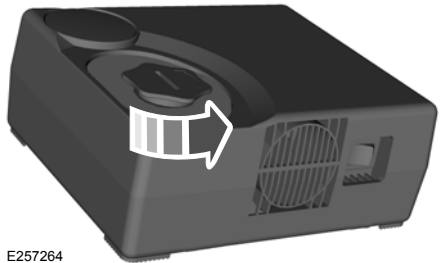
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



E257263

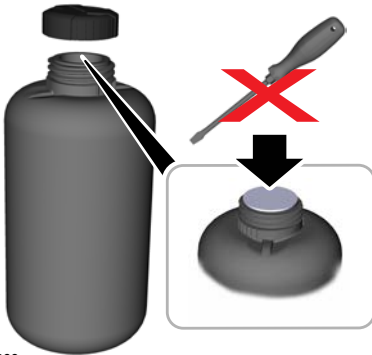
2. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 V DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

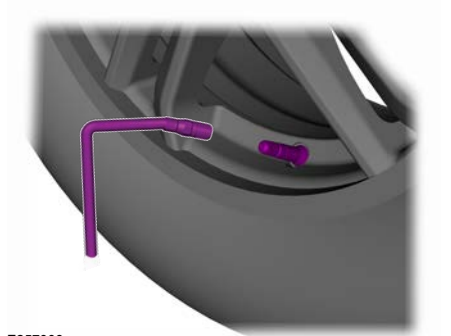
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



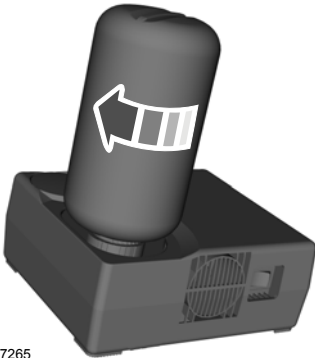
E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

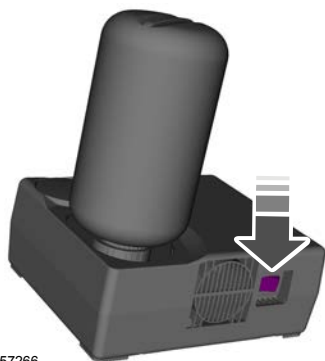
Note: *Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.*



E257022

7. Plug the 12 V DC power point connector into the 12 V DC socket. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 166).

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257266



8. Start the engine and switch the compressor on.
9. Inflate the tire to the recommended tire pressure shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Switch the compressor and the ignition off and check the current tire pressure with the pressure gauge.

Note: *If the recommended tire pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by one car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the recommended inflation pressure is still not reached, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance.*

10. Remove the power plug from the 12 V DC power point connector.
11. Unscrew the pipe from the tire valve and put the protective cap back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

Note: *Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the pipe while you disconnect it. This is normal.*

12. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of residual sealant.
13. Remove the warning label showing the maximum permissible speed 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
14. Store the kit, the bottle lid and cap safely in your vehicle. You need the kit again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257942

15. Promptly drive the vehicle cautiously for 6 km (3.7 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph)

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.*

16. After 6 km (3.7 mi) stop and check the tire pressure using the kit.
17. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and firmly screw the air compressor pipe onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
18. With the compressor off, the gauge of the kit displays the tire inflation pressure.

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 2 bar (29.0 psi) below the recommended tire pressure, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance. Do not drive your vehicle.*



19. If necessary, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 378). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 376).
20. Unscrew the compressor pipe from the valve stem and reinstall the valve cap. Leave the sealant bottle attached to the compressor. Safely store the tire sealant and inflator kit in your vehicle.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124.3 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 378). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 376). Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

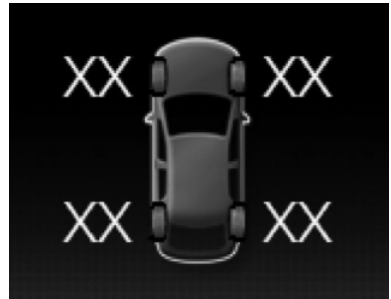
When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

Note: *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 393).

3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the system must be retrained following every tire rotation.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

The jack and tools are on the D-pillar at the left rear of the cargo area.

The locking wheel nut key is in the glove box.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicle Jack Storage in Van



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



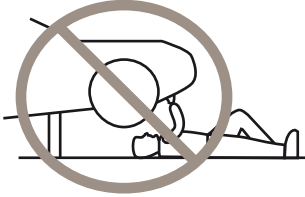
WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



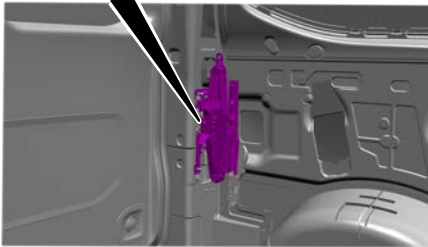
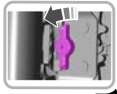
WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.


Changing a Road Wheel


 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



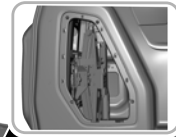
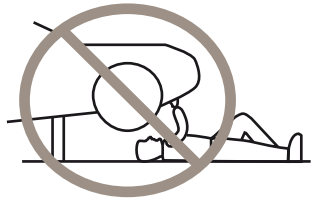
The jack and tools are at the left of the cargo area. Turn the wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.




 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

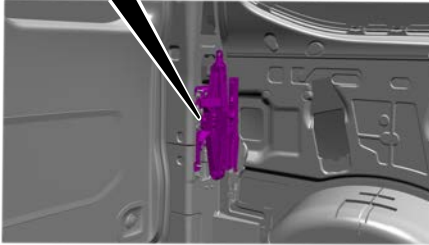
 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Vehicle Jack Storage in Bus

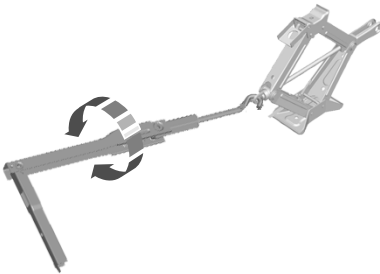
 **WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

Changing a Road Wheel



The jack and tools are at the left of the cargo area. Remove the cover in the cargo area to access the jack and tools. Turn the wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.

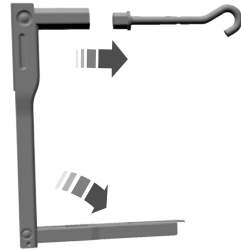
Assembling the Tools



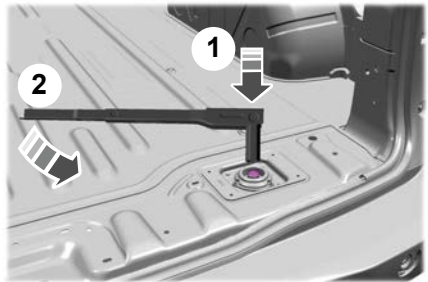
1. Insert the hook of the vehicle jack handle into the ring on the vehicle jack.
2. To raise your vehicle, rotate the vehicle jack handle clockwise.

Removing the Spare Wheel

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle and removed using a winch system.



1. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and remove the hook.



2. Open the liftgate or rear doors.

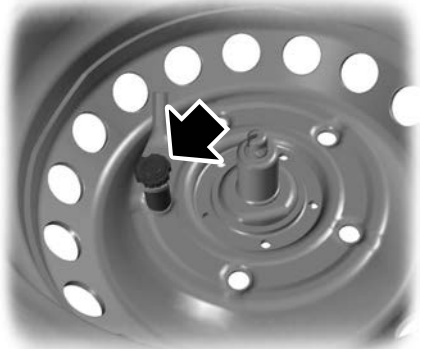
Changing a Road Wheel



3. Insert the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.



4. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813


5. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.

Stowing the Spare Wheel

To stow the spare wheel, reverse the removal procedure. Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you hear the winch clutch engage.

Note: *If the punctured wheel is not reattached, make sure you return the winch cable. Do not leave the cable hanging down.*

SWB Front Jacking Points

 **WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

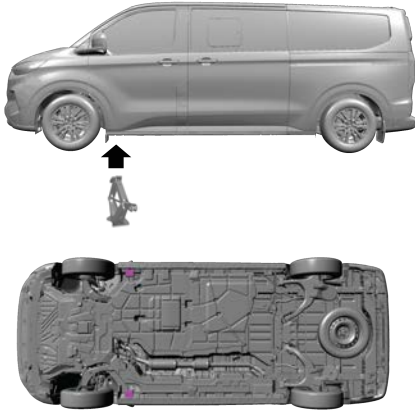
Note: *Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.*

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

Changing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



SWB Rear Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

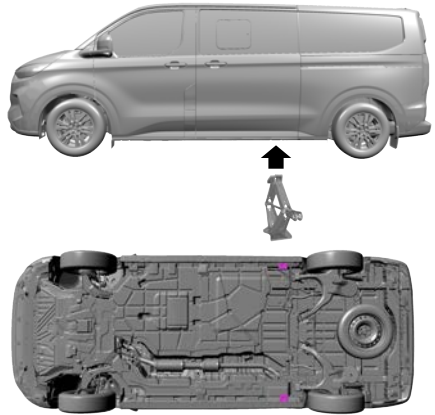
Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



LWB Front Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.

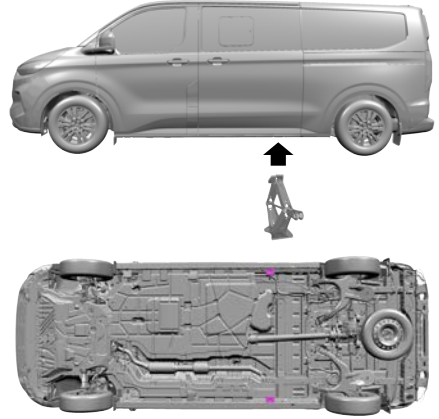
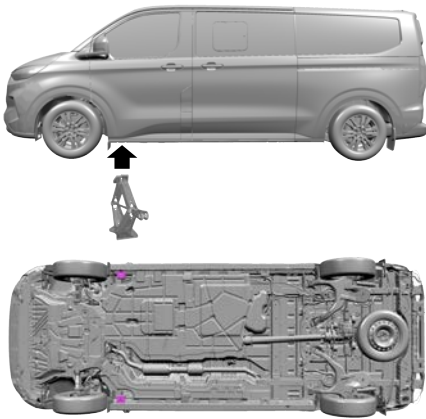


WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Changing a Road Wheel



LWB Rear Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Note: Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Removing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of

Changing a Road Wheel

the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the wheel rim and the wheel trim and carefully remove the wheel trim.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground.

2. Install the locking wheel nut key.
3. Loosen the wheel nuts and locking wheel nut.
4. Correctly position the vehicle jack.
5. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
6. Remove the wheel nuts and the locking wheel nut.
7. Remove the wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel



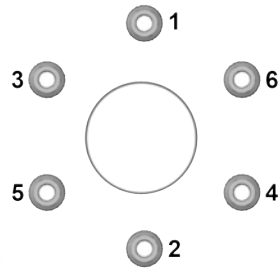
WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

1. Install the wheel.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.



2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

Note: Alloy wheel wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.

3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Install the locking wheel nut key.
5. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 401).
6. Install the wheel trim.
7. Correctly stow the spare wheel, vehicle jack, wheel brace and locking wheel nut key.

Note: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this replaced as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

WHEEL NUTS

Lug Nut Torque



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Bolt size	Nm (lb.ft)
M14 x 1.5	204 (150)

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	84.01 mm (3.3 in)
Stroke.	90 mm (3.5 in)
Capacity.	1,996 cm ³ (122 in ³)
Compression ratio.	15.8:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Fuel type.	Diesel

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Short Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,050 (198.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,275 (89.6)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,032 (80.0)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,968–1,983 (77.5–78.1)
Wheelbase.	3,100 (122.0)
Front track.	1,725–1,730 (67.9–68.1)
Rear track.	1,716–1,721 (67.6–67.8)

Medium Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,450 (214.6)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,275 (89.6)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,032 (80.0)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,966–1,981 (77.4–78.0)
Wheelbase.	3,500 (137.8)
Front track.	1,725–1,730 (67.9–68.1)
Rear track.	1,716–1,721 (67.6–67.8)

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All	9.6 L (2.1 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
FWD manual vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater.	12.3 L (2.7 gal)
FWD manual vehicles with a fuel fired heater.	12.9 L (2.8 gal)
FWD manual vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	14.4 L (3.2 gal)
FWD manual vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater.	15.1 L (3.3 gal)
FWD automatic vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater.	12.4 L (2.7 gal)
FWD automatic vehicles with a fuel fired heater.	13 L (2.9 gal)
FWD automatic vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	14.5 L (3.2 gal)
FWD automatic vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater.	15.2 L (3.3 gal)
AWD/RWD vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater.	12.7 L (2.8 gal)
AWD/RWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater.	13.3 L (2.9 gal)
AWD/RWD vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	14.8 L (3.3 gal)
AWD/RWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater.	15.5 L (3.4 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	55 L (12.1 gal)
Vehicles with larger fuel tank.	70 L (15.4 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION



WARNING: The air conditioning

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
Vehicles with front climate control.	0.53 kg (1.168 lb)	120 -0/+15 cm ³ (4.1 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
Vehicles with front and rear climate control.	0.79 kg (1.742 lb)	180 -0/+15 cm ³ (6.1 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Capacities and Specifications

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	20 L (4.4 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.2–0.13 L (2.3–0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA, JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Eight-speed automatic transmission (8F57).	11.5 L (12.2 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	0.86 L (0.9 qt)

Note: Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.

Materials

Name	Specification
Rear Axle Oil SAE 75W FM JU7J-19G518-AA	-

Materials

Name	Specification
Grease	ESA-MIC75-B

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



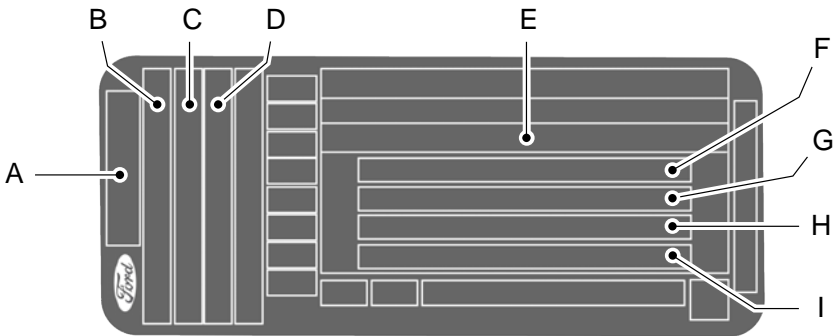
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel. You can also find it stamped into the right-hand front wheel arch.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



- A Model.
- B Variant.

Vehicle Identification

- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**.
4. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
5. Press **View Available Networks**.
6. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Connected Vehicle

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

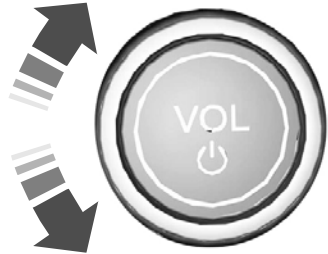


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

Note: The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Balance/Fade**.
4. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

Tone Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Tone Settings**.
4. Press the arrows or slider bar to adjust the settings.

Speed Compensated Volume

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Adaptive Volume**.
4. Press a setting.

Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.

3. Press **DSP Occupancy**.
4. Press a setting.

Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Sound Mode**.
4. Press a setting.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

AM/FM RADIO

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

Audio System

SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Note: Station list is only available for FM.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: This could cause the audio to dropout.

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Audio System

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.

Center Display Overview



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 439).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.

Voice Interaction

Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).	The system sets the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ___	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.

Alexa Built-In

4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth**® is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switching ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Phone

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Handsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

Bluetooth®

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Apps

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **MOBILE APPS** are enabled.*

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Disabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Android Auto**.

Navigation

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the homescreen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.

Navigation

5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

Navigation Alerts

Alerts will appear on the navigation map while driving. An orange alert triangle indicates you should proceed with caution. When not following active guidance to a destination, a red alert triangle may appear and indicates you should avoid the road and find a detour.

Driver Identification

HOW DOES DRIVER IDENTIFICATION WORK

Driver identification allows drivers to log into the vehicle using a specific user ID or profile.

SIGNING IN AS A DRIVER

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver ID**.
3. Select or add a driver as necessary.
4. Follow the screen instructions and log in.

Configuring Your Driver ID Avatar

1. Log in with your user ID.
2. Press your avatar image.
3. Select the settings you prefer.

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver not found.	The user ID used is not found in database.
Wrong PIN or password	The wrong PIN or password was entered.
Driver authentication time out. Unable to establish connection to the cloud.	When logging in, the vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.
Unable to establish connection to the cloud. Try again.	The vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 412).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 439).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Vehicle Software Updates

Note: Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Schedule Updates**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Factory Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Customer Information

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

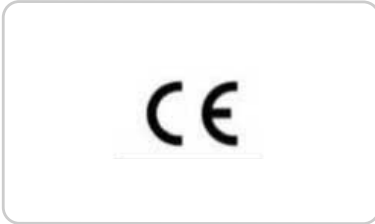
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Ukraine



United Kingdom



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina



Brazil



Customer Information

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 195/MCPT/DDTIC
Date d'agrément : 06/09/2021

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FSTR.

Europe Union EU



Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Customer Information

Mexico

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Nu méro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

Paraguay



2020-10-I-0753



South Korea



R-C-1Ap-F5TR

Customer Information

Taiwan



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80144/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์อื่น มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์อื่นได้รับการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่สอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยของสหประชาชาติ


United Kingdom



Ukraine



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

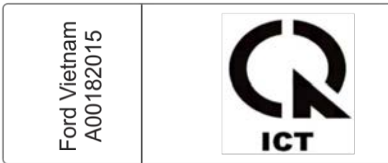
FCC ID: L2CF5TR
IC: 3432A-F5TR

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

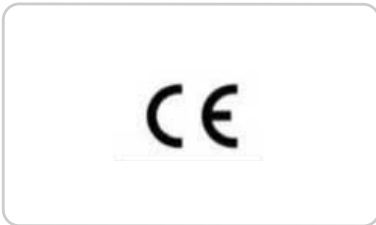
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



BODY CONTROL MODULE

European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטנדרט תקשורת: 51-87448
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שישו בתו כדי לעשות את תוכניתו האלחוטית של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכנית, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הסמכת אישורת לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא בקבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כבשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Moldova



Customer Information

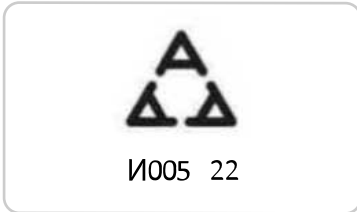
Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

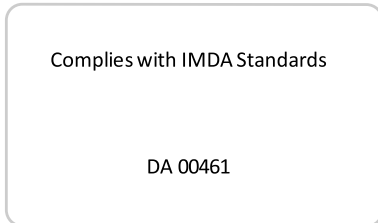
Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034975ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/10/2022

Serbia



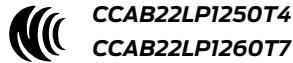
Singapore



South Africa



Taiwan



Ukraine



United Kingdom



Customer Information

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3NA2C780107

IC: 7812A-A2C780107

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24707

Brazil



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

15830-21-12270

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020

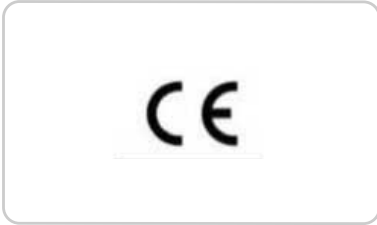
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan



Customer Information

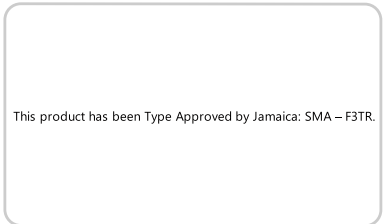
Europe Union EU



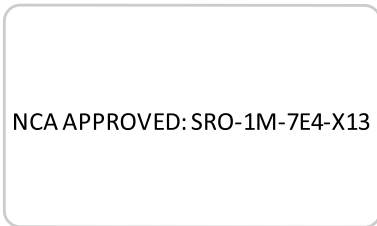
Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-82320
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות בטיסיה שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלמנטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנת, התחלת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אישורת לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Jamaica



Ghana



Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Independent State Of Samoa



Customer Information

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

Pakistan



Mexico

IFT: RCPAPF320-0479

Moldova



Paraguay



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

NR: 2020-10-I-0752

Sierra Leone



Customer Information

TAN: 2021-002-0028

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Taiwan



South Africa



Thailand

(1) เพื่อแจ้งกรมคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์ฯ ว่ามีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2) เพื่อแจ้งวิทยุคมนาคมในระบอบการเดินคลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าที่สอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความถี่โดยอัตโนมัติของวิทยุคมนาคมของประเทศไทย
รายการแจ้งเพื่อวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

South Korea



Ukraine



R-C-1Ap-F3TR

Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80143/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

United Kingdom

**UK
CA**



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF3TR

IC: 3432A-F3TR

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

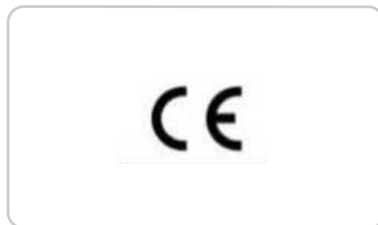
Argentina

CNC: H-16366

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

Customer Information

European Union EU



Brazil



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Paraguay



NR: 2017-10-I-0000334

NR: 2018-07-I-000317

Customer Information

NR: 2016-9-I-000220

NR: 2016-9-I-000223

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2016

 CCAB16LP284DT9

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER37535/15

DEALER No:
DA37380/15


Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2015

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER49357/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

Taiwan

 CCAB16LP284CT7

Customer Information


TRA
REGISTERED No: ER47690/16
DEALER No: DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER46754/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

United Kingdom

**UK
CA**

United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054338

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054339

FCC ID: N5F-A08TAA

FCC ID: N5F-A08TDA

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931423

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A3C054338

IC: 7812A-A3C054339

IC: 3248A-A08TAA

IC: 7812A-A2C931423

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

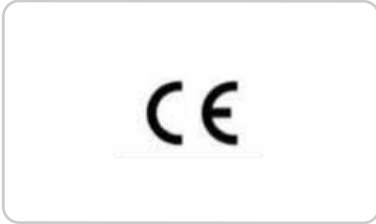
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Customer Information

RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Europe Union EU



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FO2-RX433UDA

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטנדר התקשורת: 518627
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולת במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לענות את תכונותיו האלמנטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנת, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלמנטיות.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

Customer Information

Serbia



Ukraine



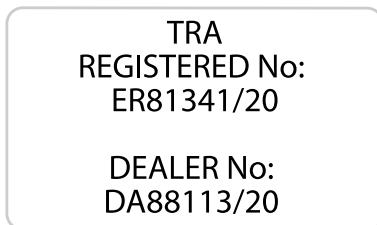
South Africa



United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Taiwan



CCAB22LP1370T1

Thailand

เพื่อสิทธิประโยชน์ทางภาษีและลดภาระภาษี มีควาปลอดภัยสูงตามข้อกำหนดของกรมศุลกากร

Customer Information

SYNC

Argentina



08658-19-01505

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24008

**Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.**

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24009

Brazil



08657-19-01505

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

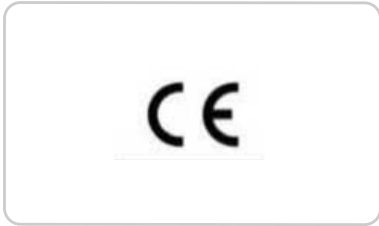
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

**Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.**

Customer Information

European Union EU



Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



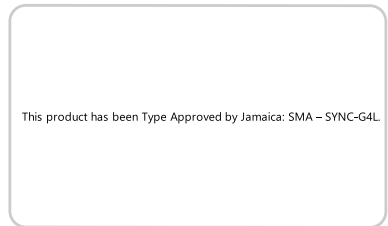
Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.



Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Customer Information

Malaysia



SQASI/TA/19/4047

SQASI/TA/19/4046

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018

Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Customer Information

Pakistan



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay



South Africa



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

Serbia



Customer Information

South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

Taiwan



CCAB20LP0290T8

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

UAE - TRA

REGISTERED No:

ER74902/19

DEALER No:

DA37380/15



CCAB20LP0300T1

TRA

REGISTERED No: ER74903/19

DEALER No: DA37380/15

Customer Information


United Kingdom



Zambia



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.



FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Argentina



Customer Information

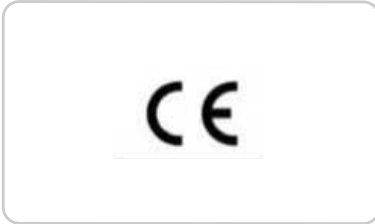
C-28150

South Africa

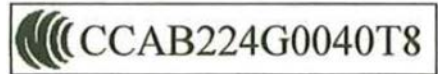
Brazil



Europe Union EU



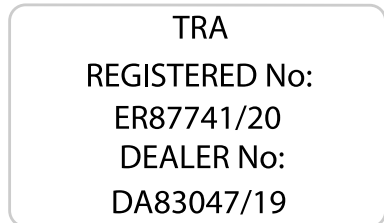
Taiwan



Mexico



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Customer Information

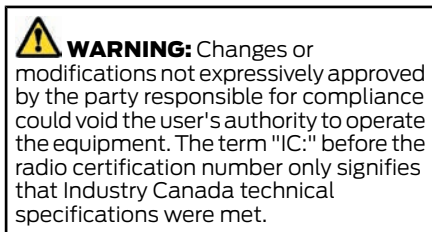
United Kingdom



Vietnam



United States and Canada



FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina



Customer Information

CNC ID: H-28035

13309-22-08001

Brazil



European Union EU



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Customer Information

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. תל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תדונה, התלפת אנטנה פקודית או הוספת אישורת לחיכוך לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

Paraguay

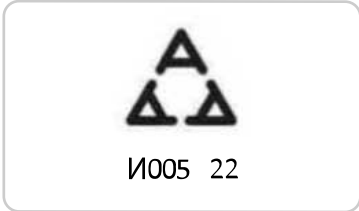


Customer Information

NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

South Korea

Serbia



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

Thailand

South Africa



- (1) เครื่องใช้หรือส่วนประกอบที่ระบุในนี้มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้หรือส่วนประกอบที่ระบุในนี้ได้รับการแต่งตั้งให้ใช้ที่สอดคล้องของทางราชการตามคำสั่งของศูนย์ข้อมูลของกรมศุลกากรซึ่งมีอำนาจหน้าที่ในการขึ้นทะเบียนและออกใบอนุญาตการนำเข้าของเครื่องใช้หรือส่วนประกอบที่ระบุในนี้

Customer Information

Ukraine



Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER10488/22


DEALER No:

DA37380/15

United Kingdom



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4

IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Argentina



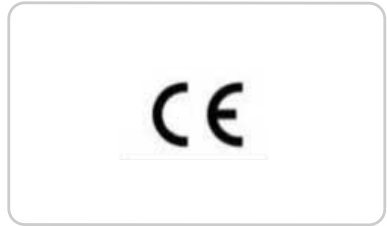
Customer Information

Democratic Republic of Congo



Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021
Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

European Union



Brazil



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Customer Information

Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במבטור שיש בן ידי לאננות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במבטור שיש בן ידי לאננות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במבטור שיש בן ידי לאננות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

Customer Information

Malaysia



AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2033)

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2032)

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2031)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

Customer Information

Russia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021



Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021



V005 21

Sierra Leone

Paraguay



NATCOM

TAN: 2021-002-0099

NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

Customer Information

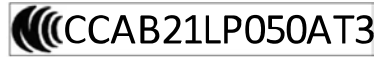
Singapore

R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

Taiwan

Complies with IMDA Standards

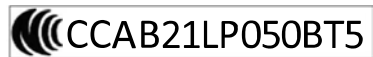
DA 00461



South Africa



South Korea



Customer Information

品名 (Product name): 無線充電座

型號 (Type Designation): WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 產地 (Origin): 馬來西亞

額定電壓 (Input rating): 12V

製造日期 (Approval date): 2021.04.21



R43208
Rolls

申請廠商名稱 (Approval name): 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

申請廠商地址 (Approval address): 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

Ukraine



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER98638/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER00421/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

United Kingdom



TRA REGISTERED No:

ER00422/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWCFDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Customer Information

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Customer Information

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 47).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 47).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 48).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

Customer Information

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): -
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Customer Information

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
 - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
 - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
 - 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
 - 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

Customer Information

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

Customer Information

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

- **Internet-Based Services**

Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

Customer Information

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Customer Information

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Customer Information

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
 - **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
 - **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
 - **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
 - **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.
- Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk
- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
 - When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Customer Information

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Customer Information

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.
--------	--

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”	Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”	Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”	VI. Australia Territory	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”		
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”		
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”		
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”		
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”		

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Customer Information

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Information

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Customer Information

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Customer Information

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Customer Information

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelomatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelomatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Customer Information

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at <https://azureford.sharepoint.com/sites/SVEBEMM PUBLIC>.

This is the technical guide for the modification and conversion of Ford Commercial Vehicles. For access you need to register a Ford Guest Account before following the link.

To request a FREE account please email BEEMM2@ford.com with the following information:

- Full name.
- Company.
- Email address.

Ford Motor Company cannot allow external partners to access SharePoint sites leveraging a public domain email account. Public domain email addresses are those that are freely available on the Internet and do not require a paid service. Examples include: Gmail, Hotmail, Live, AOL, Yahoo, iCloud, Outlook, etc. Please apply using a company-maintained email address (e.g. username@company.com).

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

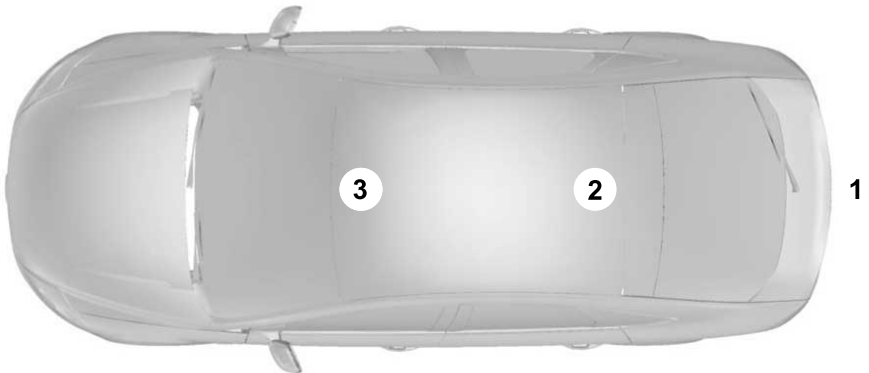


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

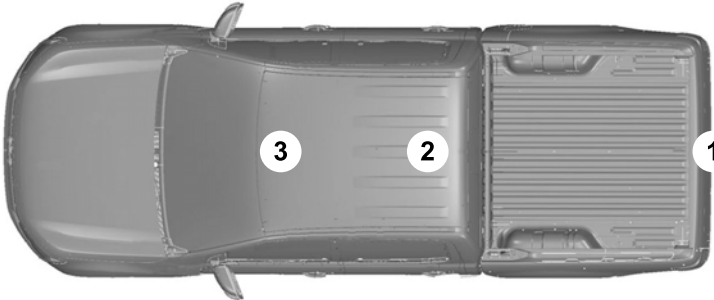


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Index

1

12V Battery.....	355
12V Battery Precautions.....	355
Battery Management System Limitations.....	356
Changing the 12V Battery.....	356
How Does the Battery Management System Work.....	356
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery.....	356
What Is the Battery Management System.....	356
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	357
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	357
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	357
180 Degree Camera.....	235
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....	235

3

360 Degree Camera.....	236
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	237
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	236
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	236

A

A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	124
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/ Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control.....	118
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	115
About This Publication.....	17
ABS See: Brakes.....	211
Accessing Navigation.....	434
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	175
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	112

Active Park Assist.....	240
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	243
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	240
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	243
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	243
Active Park Assist – Information Messages.....	243
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	247
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	262
Lane Centering.....	255
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	258
Predictive Speed Assist.....	259
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	262
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	250
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	250
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	255
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	248
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	247
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	262
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	262
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	90
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work.....	90
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information Messages.....	92
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification.....	198
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	101

Index

Adjusting the Headlamps.....	358	AM/FM Radio.....	418
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	94	AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	418
Adjusting the Map.....	434	Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station.....	419
Changing the Format of the Map.....	434	Ambient Lighting.....	94
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	434	Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	94
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	41	Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....	94
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	40	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	211
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	418	Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	211
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	75	Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
Adjusting the Volume.....	417	Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	72
Aid Mode.....	273	Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	72
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	273	How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	71
What Is Aid Mode.....	273	What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	71
Airbag Precautions.....	44	What Are the Interior Sensors.....	71
Airbags.....	43	What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	46	What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	72
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	46	What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	71
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	46	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	72
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	46	Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	72
Air Conditioning		What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	72
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:		What Is Ask on Exit.....	72
Automatic Temperature Control.....	124	Appendices.....	507
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/ Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control.....	118	Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	214
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	129	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	214
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	115	Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	214
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification.....	406	App Precautions.....	432
Alert and Aid Mode.....	274	App Requirements.....	432
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	274	Apps.....	432
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	274	Audio System.....	417
Alexa Built-In.....	425	AM/FM Radio.....	418
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	425	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	419
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	425	Audio System Precautions.....	417
All-Wheel Drive.....	210	Auto Hold.....	222
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	210	Auto Hold Indicators.....	223
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	210	Autolamps.....	83
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	210	Autolamp Settings.....	83
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	210	What Are Autolamps.....	83
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	210	Autolock.....	57
		Autolock Requirements.....	57
		Switching Autolock On and Off.....	57
		What Is Autolock.....	57

Index

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	215
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	327
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	328
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	328
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	327
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	295
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	295
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	295
Automatic Engine Stop.....	174
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	174
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	175
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	174
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	174
Automatic High Beam Control.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	86
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	86
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	86
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	85
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	86
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	86
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	87
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	87
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	208
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	208
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	208
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	206
Automatic Transmission.....	204
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	208
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	204
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	209
Manually Shifting Gears.....	206
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	207
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	408
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	205
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	204
Drive (D).....	205
Manual (M).....	205
Neutral (N).....	204
Park (P).....	204
Reverse (R).....	204
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	204
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators.....	205
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	209
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	209
Auto Mode.....	120
Auto Mode Indicators.....	120
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	120
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	122
Autorelock.....	58
How Does Autorelock Work.....	58
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop.....	178
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	178
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	179
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	180
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	179
Autounlock.....	57
Autounlock Requirements.....	57
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	57
What Is Autounlock.....	57
Autowipers.....	77
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	77
Autowipers Settings.....	77

Index

What Are Autowipers.....	77
Auxiliary Heater.....	136
Auxiliary Heater Indicators.....	136
Auxiliary Heater Precautions.....	136
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	210

B

Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	423
Blind Spot Assist.....	275
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	276
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	275
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	275
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	275
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage.....	277
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Indicators.....	278
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Limitations.....	277
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage Work.....	277
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage.....	277
Blind Spot Information System.....	280
Blind Spot Information System –	
Troubleshooting.....	283
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer	
Coverage.....	282
Blind Spot Information System	
Indicators.....	283
Blind Spot Information System	
Limitations.....	280
Blind Spot Information System	
Precautions.....	280
Blind Spot Information System	
Requirements - Automatic	
Transmission.....	281
Blind Spot Information System	
Requirements - Manual	
Transmission.....	281
Blind Spot Information System –	
Troubleshooting.....	283
Blind Spot Information System –	
Information Messages.....	283
Blind Spot Information System – Warning	
Lamps.....	283

Blind Spot Information System With	
Trailer Coverage.....	282
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer	
Coverage Limitations.....	282
How Does Blind Spot Information System	
With Trailer Coverage Work.....	282
Selecting a Trailer.....	283
Setting a Trailer Length.....	282
What Is Blind Spot Information System with	
Trailer Coverage.....	282
Bluetooth®.....	431
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood -	
LHD.....	343
See: Opening and Closing the Hood -	
RHD.....	344
Booster Seats.....	38
Brake Fluid Specification.....	212
Brake Over Accelerator.....	211
Brake Precautions.....	211
Brakes.....	211
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	211
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	212
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	212
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	213
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	212
Breaking-In.....	321

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	246
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	267
Capacities and Specifications.....	402
Cargo Lamps.....	94
Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch.....	95
Switching the Cargo Lamps On and	
Off.....	94
Center Display Limitations.....	421
Center Display Overview.....	421
Center Display Precautions.....	421
Changing a Flat Tire.....	394
Changing a Road Wheel.....	394
Changing the Backup Battery.....	49
Changing the Language.....	111
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	111
Changing the Parking Heater Remote	
Control Battery.....	139

Index

Changing the Remote Control	
Battery.....	50
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	267
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	111
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	111
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	
Name or Password.....	415
Charging a Device.....	162
Charging a Wireless Device.....	168
Checking Local Hazard Information	
Status.....	266
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	211
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	202
Checking the Selective Catalytic	
Reduction Fluid Level.....	198
Checking the Selective Catalytic	
Reduction System Status.....	198
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	376
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	78
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	29
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor	
Points.....	29
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether	
Anchor Points.....	31
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor	
Points.....	29
Child Restraints.....	33
Child Restraint Position Information.....	33
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	37
Installing Child Restraints.....	38
Child Safety.....	28
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	29
Child Restraints.....	33
Child Safety Locks.....	39
Child Safety Precautions.....	28
Cleaning the Exterior.....	367
Cleaning Camera Lenses and	
Sensors.....	368
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless	
Steel.....	367
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear	
Lamps.....	367
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	368
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	368
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	367
Cleaning the Underbody.....	368
Cleaning Wheels.....	367
Cleaning Windows and Wiper	
Blades.....	367
Cleaning the Interior.....	369
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	370
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	369
Cleaning Fabric.....	369
Cleaning Leather.....	369
Cleaning Plastic.....	369
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	370
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	370
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	369
Cleaning Vinyl.....	370
Climate Control.....	115
Auto Mode.....	120
Climate Control Hints.....	117
Closing the Liftgate.....	70
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your	
Vehicle.....	70
Closing the Sliding Door.....	61
Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your	
Vehicle.....	61
Closing the Sliding Door From Outside Your	
Vehicle.....	62
Closing the Sliding Door With the Remote	
Control.....	62
Clutch Fluid Specification.....	202
Cold Weather Precautions.....	321
Connected Vehicle.....	412
Connected Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	413
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile	
Network.....	412
Connected Vehicle Data.....	20
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	412
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	412
Connected Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	413
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	413
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	431
Connecting a Trailer.....	312
Connecting a Trailer –	
Troubleshooting.....	314
Tow Ball.....	310
Connecting a Trailer –	
Troubleshooting.....	314
Connecting a Trailer – Information	
Messages.....	314

Index

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	412
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	412
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	412
What Is the Modem.....	412
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	412
Connecting Your Phone.....	427
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle.....	506
Coolant.....	351
Adding Coolant.....	352
Changing the Coolant.....	353
Checking the Coolant Level.....	351
Coolant – Information Messages.....	355
Coolant Precautions.....	351
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	354
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	353
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	404
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	325
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	327
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	329
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	325
Post-Crash Alert System.....	327
Recovery Towing.....	328
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	415
Cross Traffic Alert.....	288
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	290
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	289
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	290
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	288
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	288
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	290
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	290
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	289
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	290
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	289
Cruise Control.....	245
Cruise Control Indicators.....	246
Cup Holders.....	169
Cup Holder Precautions.....	169
Customer Information.....	441
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	442
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	110
D	
Data Privacy.....	18
Declaration of Conformity.....	441
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	191
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	192
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	194
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	192
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Limitations.....	193
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Precautions.....	192
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Requirements.....	192
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	193
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	192
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....	191
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....	192
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	194
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	194
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	194
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	419
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	419
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	419
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	419
Directing the Flow of Air.....	116

Index

Distance Indication.....	294
Distance Indication Indicator.....	294
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	294
What Is Distance Indication.....	294
Door Lock Indicators.....	58
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	58
Doors and Locks.....	54
Autolock.....	57
Autorelock.....	58
Autounlock.....	57
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	58
Mislock.....	58
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	54
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	58
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	59
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	58
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap.....	350
Drive Mode Control.....	264
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	265
Drive Modes.....	264
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	265
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	265
Drive Modes.....	264
Eco.....	264
Normal.....	264
Slippery.....	264
Sport.....	264
Tow/Haul.....	264
Trail.....	264
Driver Alert.....	298
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	299
Driver Alert Indicators.....	299
Driver Alert Precautions.....	298
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	299
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	299
Driver Identification.....	437
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting.....	437
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting.....	437
Driver Identification – Information Messages.....	437
Driving Economically.....	321
Driving Hints.....	321
Driving in Special Conditions.....	322
Driving in Special Conditions.....	322
Driving In Sand.....	322
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	322
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	322
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	321
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	323
E	
eCall.....	47
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	49
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	49
eCall – Information Messages.....	49
eCall User Information.....	478
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	215
Electric Parking Brake.....	214
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	215
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	215
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	216
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	215
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	507
Emergency Call Indicators.....	48
Emergency Call Limitations.....	47
Emergency Call Requirements.....	47
Emergency Call System Data.....	21
Emergency Equipment.....	333
Emergency Towing.....	331
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	432
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	432
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	266
Enabling Remote Start.....	113
End User License Agreement.....	481
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	104

Index

Engine Cooling Fan.....	351
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	403
Engine Oil.....	349
Adding Engine Oil.....	349
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	349
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	349
Engine Oil – Information Messages.....	350
Engine Specifications.....	402
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist.....	240
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist.....	241
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist.....	241
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist.....	242
Environment.....	22
Evasive Steering Assist.....	295
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	295
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	296
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	295
Event Data.....	19
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist.....	243
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist.....	243
Exit Warning.....	285
Exit Warning - Troubleshooting.....	287
Exit Warning Indicators.....	285
Exit Warning Limitations.....	285
Exit Warning Precautions.....	285
Exit Warning - Troubleshooting.....	287
Exit Warning - Information Messages.....	287
Exterior Bulbs.....	359
Changing a License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	366
Changing a Mirror Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	362
Changing an Entry Lamp Bulb.....	362
Changing a Rear Fog Lamp Bulb.....	361
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	363
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	364
Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	365
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb.....	364
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	359
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	361
Exterior Lamps.....	83
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	84
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	84
Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....	83
Using All Weather Lamps.....	84
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	84
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	83
Exterior Lighting Control.....	81
Exterior Lighting.....	81
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	90
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	92
Autolamps.....	83
Automatic High Beam Control.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	87
Exterior Lamps.....	83
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	87
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	90
Headlamps.....	81
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	82
Exterior Mirrors.....	101

F

Fail-Safe Cooling.....	329
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	329
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	330
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	329
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	329
Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	351
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	40
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	196
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather.....	196

Index

Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....	196
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container.....	197
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	394
Floor Mats.....	323
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	102
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	102
Forward Collision Warning.....	295
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	295
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	295
Front Parking Aid.....	227
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	228
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	228
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	228
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	227
Front Seat Precautions.....	143
Front Seats.....	143
Heated Seats.....	151
Manual Seats.....	144
Power Seats.....	148
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings.....	190
Fuel and Refueling.....	184
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	190
Fuel Quality.....	184
Refueling.....	186
Running Out of Fuel.....	185
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	184
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	190
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	190
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	190
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	189
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	189
Fuel Economy Display.....	110
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check.....	366
Fuel Gauge.....	103
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	104
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	104
What is Distance to Empty.....	104
What is the Fuel Gauge.....	103
What is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	104
Fuel Quality.....	184
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	184
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	188
Fuse Precautions.....	334
Fuses.....	334
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	342
High Current Fuse Box.....	342
Interior Fuse Box.....	339
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	334
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	342
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	342

G

Glare Free High Beam Control.....	87
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....	88
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....	88
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....	87
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....	89
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	90
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	90
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	98
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	98
Using Global Closing.....	98
Using Global Opening.....	97
What is Global Opening and Closing.....	97

Index

H	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	358
Headlamps.....	81
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	81
Headlamp Indicators.....	82
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	81
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	81
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	82
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	82
Heated Seats.....	151
Heated Seat Precautions.....	151
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	151
Heated Steering Wheel.....	75
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	124
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/ Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control.....	118
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	115
High Current Fuse Box.....	342
Accessing the High Current Fuse Box.....	342
Identifying the Fuses in the High Current Fuse Box.....	342
Locating the High Current Fuse Box.....	342
Hill Start Assist.....	221
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	221
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	221
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	221
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	221
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....	343
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....	344
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	247
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	247
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	210
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	222
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	280
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	288
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	298
How Does Driver Identification Work.....	437
How Does eCall Work.....	47
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	285
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	221
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	292
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	292
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	291
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	217
How Does Stability Control Work.....	225
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work.....	235
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	236
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work.....	191
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	269
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	272
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	159
How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work.....	195
How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....	267
How Does Traction Control Work.....	224

Index

How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	300
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	320
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	303
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	43
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	43
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	44
I	
Identifying Fuse Types.....	342
Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	133
Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	133
Inflating the Tires.....	376
Information On Demand Screen.....	422
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	383
Instrument Cluster Display.....	109
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	109
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	107
Instrument Cluster.....	103
Fuel Gauge.....	103
Instrument Cluster Overview.....	103
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	104
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, LHD.....	24
Instrument Panel - Automatic Transmission, RHD.....	25
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, LHD.....	26
Instrument Panel - Manual Transmission, RHD.....	27
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	270
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	270
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	269
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	271
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	269
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	271
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	271
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	268
Interior Air Quality.....	141
Interior Fuse Box.....	339
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box.....	339
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box.....	340
Interior Lamp Function.....	94
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	94
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	94
Interior Lighting.....	93
Ambient Lighting.....	94
Cargo Lamps.....	94
Interior Lamp Function.....	94
Interior Mirror.....	100
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	100
Introduction.....	17
J	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	325
Jump Starting Precautions.....	325
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	325
Preparing the Vehicle.....	325
K	
Keyless Entry.....	67
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	68
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	67
Keyless Entry Settings.....	67
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	68
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	68
Keys and Remote Controls.....	50
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	52
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	52
Keys and Remote Controls – Frequently Asked Questions.....	53
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	52

Index

L	
Lane Centering.....	255
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	255
Lane Centering Alerts.....	257
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	257
Lane Centering Indicators.....	258
Lane Centering Limitations.....	256
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	258
Lane Centering Precautions.....	256
Lane Centering Requirements.....	256
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	257
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	258
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	258
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	274
Lane Keeping System.....	272
Aid Mode.....	273
Alert and Aid Mode.....	274
Blind Spot Assist.....	275
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	277
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	279
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	272
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	272
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	273
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	279
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	279
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	317
Liftgate.....	69
Closing the Liftgate.....	70
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	70
Opening the Liftgate.....	69
Liftgate Precautions.....	69
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	70
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	70
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	70
Load Carrying.....	305
Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack.....	306
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack.....	305
Load Carrying Precautions.....	305
Loading Your Trailer.....	316
Local Hazard Information.....	266
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	266
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	236
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	281
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	211
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	289
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	286
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	185
Locating the Power Outlets.....	164
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	293
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	293
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	232
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	385
Locating the USB Ports.....	162
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	167
Locating Your Vehicle.....	50
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	75
M	
Maintenance.....	343
12V Battery.....	355
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	357
Coolant.....	351
Engine Oil.....	349
Exterior Bulbs.....	359
Maintenance Precautions.....	343
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	429
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	100
Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	47
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	215

Index

Manually Shifting Gears.....	206	Route Guidance.....	435
Shifting Using the Buttons on the Column Shifter.....	206	Setting a Destination.....	434
Manual Seats.....	144	Waypoints.....	435
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	144	O	
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	147	Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....	343
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	146	Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....	344
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	146	Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows.....	99
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	147	Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Driver Window.....	96
Folding the Seat Armrest.....	147	Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows.....	96
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	154	Opening the Liftgate.....	69
Head Restraint Components.....	144	Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	69
Installing the Head Restraint.....	145	Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	69
Installing the Seats.....	156	Opening the Sliding Door.....	60
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	145	Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	60
Removing the Head Restraint.....	145	Opening the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	60
Removing the Seats.....	155	Opening the Sliding Door With the Remote Control.....	61
Rotating the Second Row Seats.....	156	Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Swiveling the Seat.....	147	Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	155	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	56
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	408	Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	54
Manual Transmission.....	202	Opening and Closing the Doors.....	55
Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	203	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	55
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	202	Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	54
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	202	OTA	
Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	203	See: Software Update Settings.....	438
Manual Transmission - Frequently Asked Questions.....	203	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
Mislock.....	58	Overhead Storage.....	169
How Does Mislock Work.....	58	Locating the Overhead Storage.....	169
Mislock Limitations.....	58		
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	58		
What Is Mislock.....	58		
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	477		
Mobile Device Data.....	20		
Muting the Audio.....	417		
N			
Navigation Map Updates.....	434		
Navigation.....	434		
Adjusting the Map.....	434		

Index

Overhead Storage Load Capacities.....	169
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	218
Overriding the Set Speed.....	255
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	438
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	438
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
P	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	230
Parking Aid Precautions.....	226
Parking Aids.....	226
Front Parking Aid.....	227
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	230
Rear Parking Aid.....	227
Side Parking Aid.....	228
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	230
Parking Aids – Information	
Messages.....	230
Parking Heater Limitations.....	137
Parking Heater.....	137
Parking Heater Settings.....	137
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	140
Parking Heater Precautions.....	137
Parking Heater Remote Control	
Indicators.....	139
Parking Heater Settings.....	137
Setting the Parking Heater Timer.....	137
Switching Continue Heat On.....	137
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	140
Parking Heater – Information	
Messages.....	140
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	45
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	71
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	71
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	71
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	71
Performing a System Reset.....	440
Personalized Settings.....	111
Phone Menu.....	427
Phone.....	427
Phone Precautions.....	427
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	431
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	162
Playing or Pausing the Audio	
Source.....	417
Post-Collision Braking.....	327
Post-Crash Alert System.....	327
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System	
Work.....	327
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	327
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System	
Off.....	327
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	327
Power Outlet Indicators.....	164
Power Outlet Limitations.....	164
Power Outlet.....	164
Power Outlet Precautions.....	164
Power Seats.....	148
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	148
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	150
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	150
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	150
Folding the Seat Armrest.....	151
Head Restraint Components.....	148
Installing the Head Restraint.....	149
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	149
Removing the Head Restraint.....	149
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	438
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	293
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	292
Pre-Collision Assist.....	291
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	295
Distance Indication.....	294
Evasive Steering Assist.....	295
Forward Collision Warning.....	295
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	296
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	296
Pre-Collision Assist – Information	
Messages.....	296
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning	
Lamps.....	296
Predictive Speed Assist.....	259
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	260
How Does Predictive Speed Assist	
Work.....	259

Index

Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	261	Rear Cargo Area.....	308
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	261	Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	308
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	260	Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	259	Warnings.....	161
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode		Rear Occupant Alert System	
On and Off.....	260	Indicators.....	160
Predictive Speed Assist –		Rear Occupant Alert System	
Troubleshooting.....	262	Limitations.....	159
Predictive Speed Assist – Information		Rear Occupant Alert System	
Messages.....	262	Precautions.....	159
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	372	Rear Occupant Alert System.....	159
Programming the Remote Control.....	52	Rear Occupant Alert System	
Protecting the Environment.....	22	Settings.....	160
Puncture		Rear Parking Aid.....	227
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	394	Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	171	Sensors.....	227
R		Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	227
Radio Frequency Certification		Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	227
Labels.....	442	What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	227
Antennas.....	442	Rear Passenger Climate Control	
Blind Spot Information System		Indicators.....	135
Sensors.....	442	Rear Passenger Climate Control.....	133
Body Control Module.....	446	Rear Auto Mode.....	134
Cruise Control Module.....	448	Rear Seats.....	153
Keys and Remote Controls.....	452	Heated Seats.....	157
Radio Transceiver Module.....	456	Manual Seats.....	153
SYNC.....	458	Rear Seats Videos.....	158
Telematics Control Unit.....	463	Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	233
Tire Pressure Monitoring System		Rear View Camera Limitations.....	232
Sensors.....	465	Rear View Camera Precautions.....	232
Wireless Accessory Charging		Rear View Camera.....	232
Module.....	469	Rear View Camera Settings.....	233
REACH.....	441	Rear View Camera Settings.....	233
Rear Auto Mode.....	134	Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and	
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and		Off.....	234
Off.....	134	Switching Rear View Camera Object	
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and		Distance Indicator On and Off.....	234
Specification.....	409	Zooming the Rear View Camera In and	
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	308	Out.....	233
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor		Rebooting the Center Display.....	422
Points.....	308	Recovery Towing.....	328
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load		Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	328
Capacities.....	309	Installing the Towing Eye.....	328
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point		Locating the Towing Eye.....	328
Precautions.....	308	Refueling.....	186
		Refueling System Overview.....	186
		Refueling Your Vehicle.....	186

Index

Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	215
Remote Control Limitations.....	50
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	113
Remote Start Limitations.....	113
Remote Start.....	113
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel.....	114
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	113
Removing the Key Blade.....	50
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	373
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	371
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	476
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	52
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	141
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	78
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	79
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	56
Resetting Driver Alert.....	298
Resetting the Power Sliding Door.....	62
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	112
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	391
Restarting the Engine.....	178
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	267
Resuming the Set Speed.....	246
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	218
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	217
Reverse Brake Assist - Troubleshooting.....	219
Reverse Brake Assist - Troubleshooting.....	219
Reverse Brake Assist - Frequently Asked Questions.....	220
Reverse Brake Assist - Information Messages.....	219
Reverse Wipe.....	78
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	78
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	78
Rollover Warning.....	441
Roof Rack - Vehicles With: Integrated Roof Rack.....	306
Adjusting a Roof Rack Crossbar.....	307
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	307
Roof Rack Precautions.....	306
Roof Rack - Vehicles Without: Integrated Roof Rack.....	305
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	306
Roof Rack Precautions.....	305
Route Guidance.....	435
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	435
Canceling Route Guidance.....	435
Repeating an Instruction.....	435
Running-In See: Breaking-In.....	321
Running Out of Fuel.....	185
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	185
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	185
S	
Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	418
Seatbelt Precautions.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder.....	41
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	41
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	41
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	41
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	41
Seatbelts.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder.....	41
Seatbelts - Troubleshooting.....	42
Seatbelts - Troubleshooting.....	42
Seatbelts - Information Messages.....	42
Security.....	71
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	72
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	71
Security - Troubleshooting.....	73
Security - Troubleshooting.....	73
Security - Frequently Asked Questions.....	74
Security - Information Messages.....	73
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	264
Selecting a Menu Item.....	418
Selecting the Audio Source.....	417

Index

Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....	198
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....	195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....	195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....	195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	195
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	196
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages.....	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps.....	199
Service Data.....	19
Setting a Destination.....	434
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	435
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	434
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	434
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	435
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	434
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	434
Setting a Memory Preset.....	417
Settings Data.....	20
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	252
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	253
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	251
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	251
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	116
Setting the Clock and Date.....	418
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	245
Setting the Speed Limit.....	267
Setting the Temperature.....	116
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change.....	301
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning.....	301
Setting the Wake Word.....	423
Shifting Into Reverse.....	202
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	206
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	205
Side Parking Aid.....	228
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors.....	229
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	229
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	228
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	228
Signing In as a Driver.....	437
Signing In to Your Account.....	425
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	143
Sliding Door Precautions.....	60
Sliding Door.....	60
Closing the Sliding Door.....	61
Opening the Sliding Door.....	60
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	63
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	63
Sliding Door – Frequently Asked Questions.....	64
Sliding Door – Information Messages.....	63
Software Update Indicators.....	439
Software Update Settings.....	438
Software Update See: Software Update Settings.....	438
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
Speed Control See: Cruise Control.....	245
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	268
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	268
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	267
Speed Limiter.....	267
Speedometer.....	103

Index

Stability Control Indicator.....	225	Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	433
Stability Control.....	225	Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	432
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	171	Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Automatic Transmission.....	222
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	171	Switching Auto Hold On and Off - Manual Transmission.....	222
Automatic Engine Stop.....	174	Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	178
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	175	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	281
Starting the Engine.....	172	Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	115
Stopping the Engine.....	173	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	289
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	175	Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	245
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	177	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	115
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	176	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	298
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	175	Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	286
Starting the Engine.....	172	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	255
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....	172	Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	270
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	172	Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off.....	221
Starting a Flooded Engine.....	173	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	119
Status Bar.....	421	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	118
Steering Wheel.....	23	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window.....	115
Stopping the Engine.....	178	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window.....	115
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	173	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	226
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	173	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	115
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement.....	62	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	218
Storage.....	169	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	225
Cup Holders.....	169	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	430
Overhead Storage.....	169		
Under Seat Storage.....	169		
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	333		
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	333		
Storing Your Vehicle.....	372		
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off.....	240		
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	250		
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	118		
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	93		

Index

Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....	235
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	238
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	238
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	417
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off.....	136
Switching the Display On and Off.....	419
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	93
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	325
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window.....	116
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window.....	116
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	115
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	119
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	269
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	273
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	273
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control.....	138
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	45
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus.....	93
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off.....	133
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	78
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....	267
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	224
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	303
System Update See: Software Update Settings.....	438
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
T	
Tachometer.....	103
Technical Specifications See: Capacities and Specifications.....	402
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	207
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	207
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	208
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work.....	207
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	207
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	441
Tire Care.....	376
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	392
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	392
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	393
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	392
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus.....	376
Tire Pressure Specifications - Camper.....	380
Tire Pressure Specifications - Van.....	378
Tire Rotation.....	383
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	385
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	385
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	385
Tow Ball.....	310
Deploying the Tow Ball Arm.....	312
Retracting the Tow Ball Arm.....	312
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	310
Tow Ball Components.....	311
Tow Ball Limitations.....	310

Index

Tow Ball Precautions.....	310
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	316
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	315
Towing a Trailer.....	315
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	317
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	317
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	318
Towing Weight Capacities.....	317
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	331
Towing Your Vehicle.....	331
Traction Control Indicator.....	224
Traction Control.....	224
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	224
Traction Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	224
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	224
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	224
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Indicators.....	300
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Limitations.....	300
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Precautions.....	300
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	300
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	302
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	302
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information	
Messages.....	302
Trailer Lighting Check.....	313
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	320
Trailer Sway Control.....	320
Trailer Towing Hints.....	317
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	435
Trip Computer.....	112
Trip Data.....	112
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Bus.....	376
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications -	
Camper.....	380
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Van.....	378
U	
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	334
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	334
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood	
Fuse Box.....	335
Under Hood Overview - LHD.....	347
Under Hood Overview - RHD.....	348
Under Seat Storage.....	169
Locating the Under Seat Storage	
Compartment.....	169
USB Ports.....	162
Using Alexa Built-In.....	425
Using Auto Hold.....	222
Using Keyless Entry.....	67
Using Snow Chains.....	374
Using Summer Tires.....	374
Using the Instrument Cluster Display	
Controls.....	109
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Kit.....	386
Using This Publication.....	17
Using Winter Tires.....	374
V	
Vehicle Care.....	367
Cleaning the Exterior.....	367
Cleaning the Interior.....	369
Vehicle Dimensions.....	403
Vehicle Identification Number.....	410
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Number.....	410
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	410
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Plate.....	410
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	410
Vehicle Identification.....	410
Vehicle Identification Number.....	410
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	410
Vehicle Software Updates.....	438
Vehicle System Reset.....	440
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot –	
Troubleshooting.....	416
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	416
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	415
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot –	
Troubleshooting.....	416

Index

Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	124
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual	
Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/	
Triple Zone Automatic Temperature	
Control.....	118
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual	
Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Air	
Conditioning.....	115
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	391
Visual Search.....	23
Voice Interaction Examples.....	423
Voice Interaction.....	423
W	
Warnings and Notes Used in This	
Publication.....	17
Washer Fluid Specification.....	406
Washers.....	79
Adding Washer Fluid.....	80
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and	
Off.....	79
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	80
Using the Windshield Washer.....	79
Washer Precautions.....	79
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	77
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	371
Waypoints.....	435
Adding a Waypoint.....	435
Editing Waypoints.....	435
What Are the Instrument Cluster	
Indicators.....	106
What Are the Instrument Cluster	
Warning Lamps.....	104
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	412
What Is Active Park Assist.....	240
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	425
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	178
What Is Blind Spot Information	
System.....	280
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	288
What Is Cruise Control.....	245
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	264
What Is Driver Alert.....	298
What Is eCall.....	47
What Is Exit Warning.....	285
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	221
What Is Keyless Entry.....	67
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	266
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	291
What Is Remote Start.....	113
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	217
What Is Stability Control.....	225
What Is the 180 Degree Camera.....	235
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	236
What Is the Auxiliary Heater.....	136
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	141
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....	191
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	214
What Is the Information Bar.....	104
What Is the Intelligent Speed	
Limiter.....	269
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	272
What Is the Parking Heater.....	137
What Is the Power Outlet.....	164
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert	
System.....	159
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	232
What Is the Selective Catalytic	
Reduction System.....	195
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring	
System.....	391
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Kit.....	385
What Is the Wireless Accessory	
Charger.....	167
What Is Traction Control.....	224
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	300
What Is Voice Interaction.....	423
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	303
Wheel and Tire Information.....	374
Wheel Nuts.....	401
Wi-Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	
Name or Password.....	415
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi	
Network.....	412
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	415
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	415
Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	98

Index

What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Windows.....	96
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	80
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	80
Wipers and Washers – Warning	
Lamps.....	80
Wipers and Washers.....	77
Autowipers.....	77
Reverse Wipe.....	78
Washers.....	79
Wipers.....	77
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	80
Wipers.....	77
Switching Windshield Wipers On and	
Off.....	77
Wiper Precautions.....	77
Wireless Accessory Charger	
Precautions.....	167
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	167
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	303
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	303
Wrong Way Alert –	
Troubleshooting.....	304
Wrong Way Alert – Information	
Messages.....	304
Wrong Way Alert.....	303
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	304

